# DISCOVERY SPORT

# OWNER'S HANDBOOK

**Publication Part No. LRL 10 01 63 152**

## ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

## IMPORTANT

*The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.*

*The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.*

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the Land Rover internet site at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

## SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

**Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.**

Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.

This symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

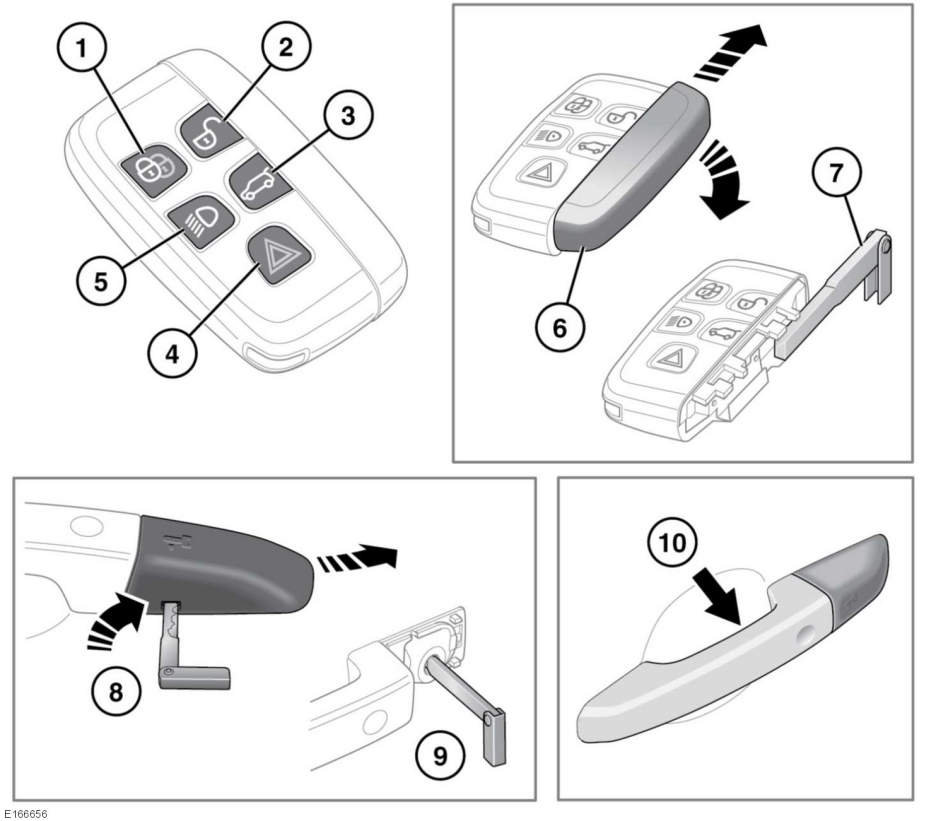
## INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEOS

Throughout this handbook are a selection of QR codes which, when scanned using a smartphone app, will connect the smartphone to relevant instructional videos.

***Note:*** *These videos are best viewed using a high-speed internet or 4G connection.*

# Contents

## UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE




E166656

⚠ **Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 inches) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.**

**Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see 255, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.**

**The vehicle can be operated when the Smart key is inside the vehicle. So to prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave the Smart key unattended in the vehicle. Also never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle.**

***Note:*** *The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.*

***Note:*** *If any door, or the tailgate, is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the latch is disabled for approximately one minute.*

The vehicle is supplied with 2 Smart keys. The Smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system, and allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked and driven without the use of a conventional key. See **8, KEYLESS ENTRY**, **15, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **108, STARTING THE ENGINE**. Each Smart key also has an emergency key housed behind a slide off cover.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See **14, SINGLE LOCKING**, **14, DOUBLE LOCKING** and **16, GLOBAL CLOSING**.
2. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and deactivate the alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been deactivated. The interior lamps will illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. Power-fold mirrors will unfold (if enabled). See **8, GLOBAL OPENING**.
3. Tailgate operation: Press briefly to open/close the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the Perimeter alarm will remain active while the tailgate is open, but intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be disabled for the duration that the tailgate is open.

   When closing the tailgate again, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash after a few seconds to confirm that the full alarm system has been reactivated. There will also be an audible sound if the vehicle was double locked. See **10, OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE**. See also **11, OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.

   ***Note:*** *Make sure the Smart key does not remain in the vehicle prior to closure. If the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference or the Smart key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.*
4. Panic alarm:
   - Press and hold for 3 seconds (or press 3 times within 3 seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lamps.
   - Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the button and holding for 3 seconds (or pressing 3 times within 3 seconds).
   - The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if a valid Smart key is present when the START/STOP button is pressed.
5. Approach illumination:
   - When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to turn the approach lamps off.

     ***Note:*** *In some markets, a second press of the button will turn on the headlamps and reversing lamps. A third press will be required to turn the lamps off.*

- The approach illumination period, set at the factory, is 30 seconds. This delay period may be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

6. Emergency key access: Slide open the side cover to release, then remove.
7. Remove the emergency key blade and unfold.
8. If the Smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover and gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully rotate the door lock cover upwards, to lever the cover off the retaining clips.
9. Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm will sound until the Smart key is positioned correctly, to disarm the alarm: see **109, KEYLESS START BACKUP**.

   ***Note:*** *When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top retaining clips before pushing the cover into position.*
10. Keyless entry/exit: Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

***Note:*** *A replacement Smart key can be obtained only from a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The Dealer/Authorised Repairer will require proof of identification and ownership. Notify your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately if a Smart key is lost or stolen.*

## SINGLE/MULTI-POINT ENTRY

When you press the unlock button, the vehicle will unlock in one of two ways:

1. Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler flap only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors, the fuel filler flap and the tailgate on the first press.

To change from Single to Multi-point entry (or vice versa), press both the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the change.

This feature may also be set via **Vehicle Set-up** in the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *If, when the vehicle is unlocked, an audible warning is emitted, this will be a 'Mislock' error. There may be a fault with either of the alarm sensors. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.*

## GLOBAL OPENING

Press and hold the Smart key unlock button for 3 seconds to unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows.

To cancel Global opening, press any of the buttons on the Smart key or operate the driver's window switches. To stop a particular window opening, operate the relevant window switch.

***Note:*** *Global opening can be enabled and disabled via* ***Vehicle Set-up*** *in the Instrument panel menu. See* ***49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

## KEYLESS ENTRY

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a Smart key is within 1.0 m (3 ft) of the door handle or the tailgate external switch.

***Note:*** *The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.*

***Note:*** *The Smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. It does not need to be exposed or handled.*

To enter the vehicle, just pull the door handle. The alarm will be disarmed and the doors unlocked according to the current unlock/entry setting (Single or Multi-point). The hazard warning lamps will flash twice as 'unlock' confirmation. Power-folded mirrors will fold out (if enabled).

***Note:*** *If Single-point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.*

**Instructional video - Keyless entry.**

E166649

## CONVENIENCE MODE

When the door is opened using either the Smart key or Keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates the Convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Driver position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Message centre.
- Auxiliary power socket.

## SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

**Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. See 255, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.**

## STEERING COLUMN LOCK

During vehicle recovery, a Smart key must remain inside the vehicle, so that the steering column remains unlocked. See **240, RECOVERY METHOD**.

Your vehicle is fitted with an electronic steering column lock, which locks and unlocks in conjunction with the vehicle's locking system. It also locks automatically, after a time delay, if the ignition is switched off and the Smart key is removed from the vehicle.

Any malfunction of the steering column lock will be indicated by the message **Steering Column Locked** being displayed in the Message centre. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the Smart key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock, by turning the steering wheel gently to the left and right.
3. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

## DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. This feature can be enabled/disabled via **Drive-away locking** in the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

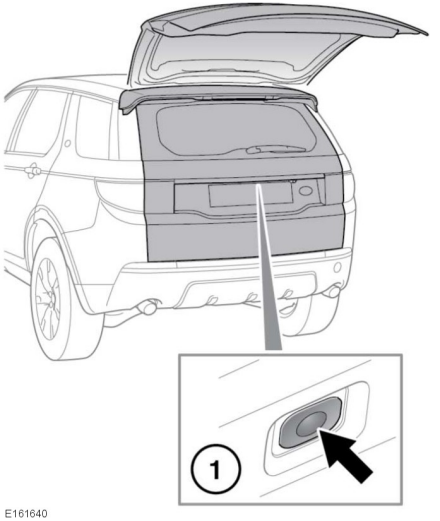
***Note:*** *Pressing the unlock or lock button on the driver or front passenger door after Drive-away locking has taken place, will override Drive-away locking for the current journey. See* ***16, DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS****.*

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

**While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.**

Make sure there is a minimum space of 1.5 m (58 ins) above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.




E161640

1. Press to release the tailgate and then lift the tailgate to open.

***Note:*** *The tailgate external release switch will operate if all of the doors are unlocked and the automatic transmission gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. If the gear selector is in the Neutral (**N**) position, the switch will only operate if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in Convenience mode or switched off. The switch will not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.*

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate release button. See **290, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
- The Smart key tailgate release button. See **6, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

***Note:*** *The tailgate will not open if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).*

Closing the tailgate: As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it will automatically 'soft close' to the fully closed position. Do not slam the tailgate.

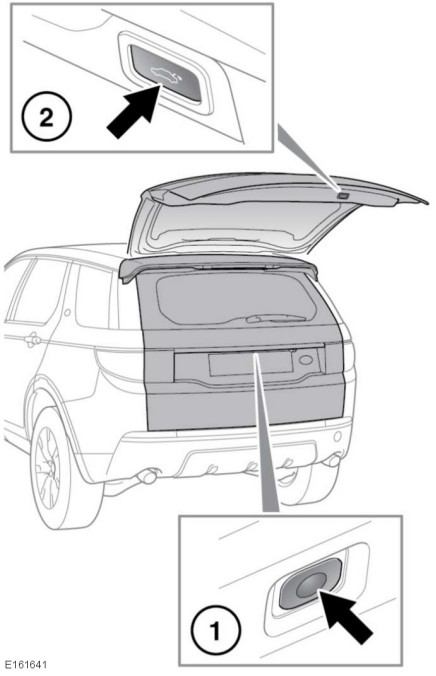
***Note:*** *If the Smart key is inadvertently left inside the loadspace and the vehicle is locked and the alarm set, an audible warning will sound to indicate a mislock and the tailgate will re-open after approximately 3 seconds. The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc.*

***Note:*** *Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. The visible and audible warnings will indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE

**While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.**

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.



E161641

1. Press the button to open the powered tailgate. The button can also be used to stop, reverse the direction, or close the tailgate.
2. Press the button to close the powered tailgate. The button can also be used to stop the tailgate while it is opening.

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the tailgate release button again.

As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it will 'soft close' to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm that the vehicle has locked and rearmed to the previous locked and armed state. An audible warning may also sound as confirmation.

***Note:*** *If a tailgate button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement will stop. However, if a button is pressed during the 'soft close' stage, the open request will be ignored.*

**Before operating the tailgate, make sure anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the 'soft close' action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.**

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement will stop. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate button again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing, tailgate movement will stop and then reverse to the fully open position (if available to do so). An audible warning will be given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and if the tailgate is open, press the tailgate switch again to close the tailgate. If the tailgate is not open, press a tailgate release switch to open the tailgate, remove any obstructions. Once the obstructions have been removed, press the tailgate close switch to close the tailgate.

**Instructional video - Powered tailgate.**

E166648

## TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height can be set as required. This is useful in parking areas with low ceiling heights, or just for ease of use.

1. Open the tailgate to the position which you want to set as the maximum height. Press any tailgate control to stop movement at the required position. The final position can be achieved manually, if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close switch for 10 seconds to set the maximum opening height.
4. Close the tailgate, then open again to check that it opens to the programmed height.

***Note:*** *If, after performing part* ***3*** *of the process, the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process, making sure that all steps are adhered to.*

To reset the maximum opening height, repeat the process, but when the tailgate reaches its current programmed height, manually move it to the fully open position, before pressing and holding the button.

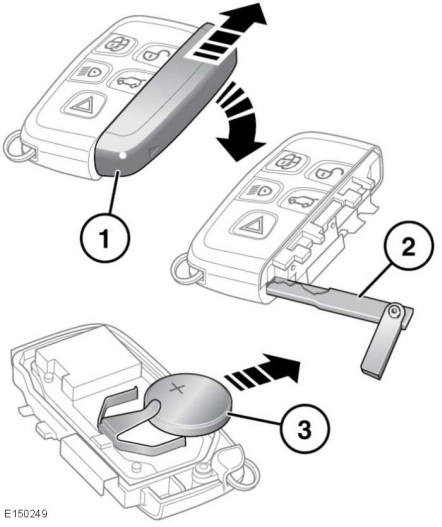
The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections, or if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a release switch.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open, or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close switch.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully. The tailgate's programmed memory will now be restored.

## SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** will be displayed in the Message centre.




To replace the battery:

1. Remove the cover by sliding in the directions of the arrows.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the Smart key body.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery (available from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer) with the positive (+) side upwards.

***Note:*** *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture/oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

***Note:*** *If the low battery warning does not extinguish, this indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.*

Refit the parts in reverse order, making sure that they click securely into place.

**Battery disposal:** Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

## SMART KEY CARE

**To prevent accidental operation, which may result in an injury, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.**

Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, humidity or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and attach it to the designated area in the Service Record & Warranty Benefits booklets, supplied in the literature pack. Keep this safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

***Note:*** *The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the Smart key may be used by other devices (e.g., medical equipment). This may prevent the Smart key from operating correctly.*

## SINGLE LOCKING

Press the lock button on the Smart key briefly to single lock the vehicle and activate the Perimeter alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle. In this state, only the Perimeter alarm is activated. See **17, MISLOCK**.

***Note:*** *This setting should be used in circumstances, such as travelling on a ferry, when pets are to be left in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open, etc.*

***Note:*** *Always secure your vehicle when left unattended. Where possible, always secure your vehicle to the maximum available level of security.*

## DOUBLE LOCKING

⚠ **Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.**

Press the lock button on the Smart key twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle and activate the full alarm system. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm and a double lock tone will sound.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from inside or outside of the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside the vehicle when double locked.

This provides extra security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the door locks from inside. Additionally, Double locking also activates the full alarm system, see **15, FULL ALARM**.

***Note:*** *In this state, an open window may cause the alarm to sound due to the movement of air currents. For this reason, make sure all of the windows are fully closed before Double locking the vehicle.*

## LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed (either by Single or Double locking), press either the Smart key lock button or, if Keyless entry is fitted, touch an exterior door handle lock sensor. The hazard warning lamps will flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

***Note:*** *If the vehicle is **not** already locked and armed, pressing the lock button will single lock the vehicle. Press again to double lock, if required.*

## AUTOMATIC RELOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

If a door, the tailgate or the bonnet are not opened within 40 seconds of unlocking the vehicle via the Smart key, all of the doors will re-lock automatically to the previous locked state and the alarm will re-arm.

## PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm system is activated when the vehicle is single locked. See **14, SINGLE LOCKING**.

Once activated, the alarm system will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door is opened.

- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid Smart key present.

If the vehicle is fitted with a battery-backed sounder, the sounder will sound if the battery is disconnected, or an attempt is made to disconnect the sounder.

## FULL ALARM

The full alarm system is activated when the vehicle is double locked. See **14, DOUBLE LOCKING**.

Once activated, the alarm system will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door are opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle's interior.
- The vehicle is raised or tilted.

If the vehicle is fitted with a Battery-backed sounder, the alarm system will also sound if:

- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the Battery-backed sounder.

## INTERIOR PROTECTION

The interior protection feature of the full alarm system may be temporarily disabled via **Alarm sensors** in the **Vehicle set-up** menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *If the interior protection is temporarily disabled, it will be automatically enabled the next time the vehicle is Double locked with the Smart key.*

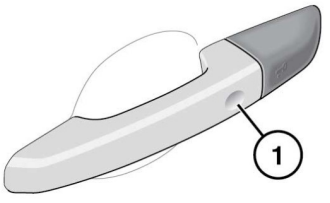
## KEYLESS LOCKING

**Never double lock the vehicle with people, children or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.**

***Note:*** *The vehicle will not lock automatically.*

The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc.

***Note:*** *Loose coins, in the same pocket as the Smart key, may also affect its detection.*



E166657

***Note:*** *Keyless locking will activate only if the Smart key is detected outside the vehicle. If no Smart key is present, no locking will occur.*

- To single lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor on the door handle (**1**) once, without grabbing the door handle.

  ***Note:*** *Do not place your fingers around the back of the handle while touching the sensor; doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking.*
  The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm locking and the power fold mirrors will fold in (if enabled).
- To double lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor (**1**) twice within 3 seconds, without grabbing the door handle.

  ***Note:*** *Do not place your fingers around the back of the handle while touching the sensor; doing so will prevent the vehicle from locking.*

The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm (with a long second flash). An audible confirmation may also be given (if enabled).

***Note:*** *When locking the vehicle via Keyless locking, if one or more of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate is not fully closed, or the ignition is ON, the vehicle will NOT lock. There will be NO audible mislock error warning. The hazard warning lamps will NOT flash and the door mirrors (if enabled) will NOT fold in. Check that all of the doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is turned OFF and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

## GLOBAL CLOSING

**Make sure no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating Global closing.**

Make sure all of the doors are closed. Press and hold the Smart key lock button for 3 seconds. The vehicle will single lock and the alarm will be armed immediately. After 3 seconds, any open windows will be closed.

Keyless Global closing (if enabled) can be operated by touching the door lock sensor for 3 seconds. This will also single lock the vehicle and activate the alarm.

***Note:*** *The windows will close only while the door lock sensor is being touched. To fully secure the vehicle, continue to touch the door lock sensor until all of the windows are fully closed.*

***Note:*** *Global closing can be enabled and disabled via the* ***Vehicle Set-up*** *Instrument panel menu. See* ***49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

## BATTERY-BACKED SOUNDER

In certain markets, a Battery-backed sounder is fitted. This device will sound if it, or the vehicle's battery is disconnected while the security system is armed.

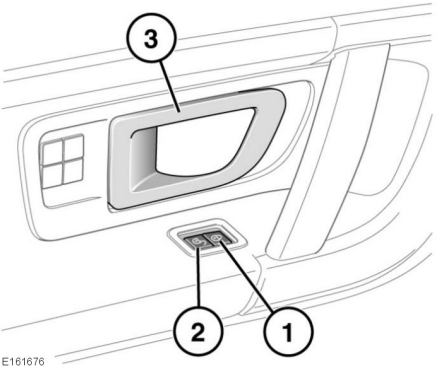
## TILT SENSOR

The tilt sensor detects any change to the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle is double locked, any change in the vehicle's angle will activate the tilt alarm.

***Note:*** *The tilt sensors can be temporarily disabled for the next time the vehicle is locked. See* ***49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****. The sensors will be automatically enabled the next time the vehicle is double locked with the Smart key.*

## DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS

**While a door is open, the locking latch is exposed. If your vehicle is fitted with the soft close feature, do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft close and trap items or body parts.**



1. To lock: With all of the doors closed, press any lock button to lock all of the doors.
2. To unlock: Press any unlock button to unlock all of the doors. Alternatively, pull either front door release handle (**3**) once to unlock all of the doors.
   Pull either rear door release handle once to unlock the individual rear door.

   ***Note:*** *All unlock buttons are inhibited when the vehicle is locked with the Smart key.*
3. Door release handle: Pull to unlock and open the door(s). If the door is locked, pulling either front door handle once will unlock all of the doors. Pulling either rear door handle once will unlock the individual rear door.

   ***Note:*** *The rear child security feature will inhibit the rear door lock and unlock switches, and the door release handles. See* ***36, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS****.*

## MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the Smart key, a Mislock can occur if:

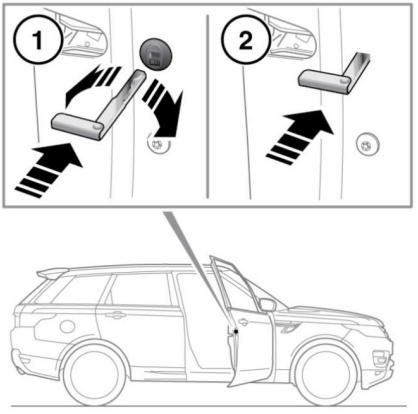
- One or more of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is ON.
- A Smart key is left inside the vehicle.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle will NOT lock and there will be an audible mislock error warning. The hazard warning lamps will NOT flash and the door mirrors (if enabled) will NOT fold in. Check that all of the doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is turned OFF and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm has been triggered, it can be deactivated by pressing the Smart key unlock button, or by positioning the Smart key against the steering column and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button. See **109, KEYLESS START BACKUP**.

## EMERGENCY LOCKING




E149765

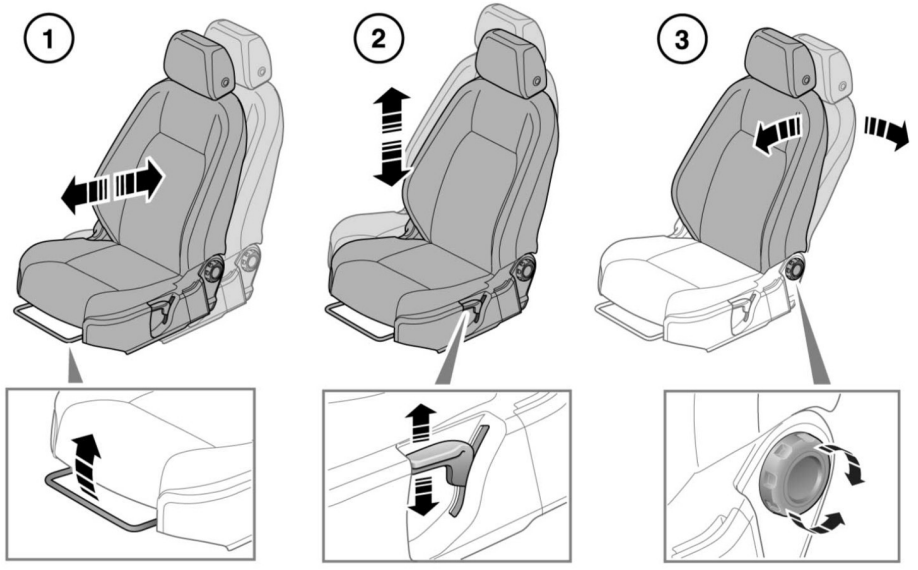
In the event of the battery discharging or a fault with the keyless locking system, the doors must be locked manually.

***Note:*** *Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle, at any point during the emergency locking procedure.*

1. Open the door and locate the emergency lock access cover. Using the emergency key blade (see **6, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**), rotate the cover to release it from the door. Remove the cover and store it safely.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock.
   The emergency key blade can now be removed.

3. Refit the emergency lock access cover and rotate it clockwise to secure it firmly.
4. Close the door and check to make sure the door is locked.
   Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

## MANUAL SEATS



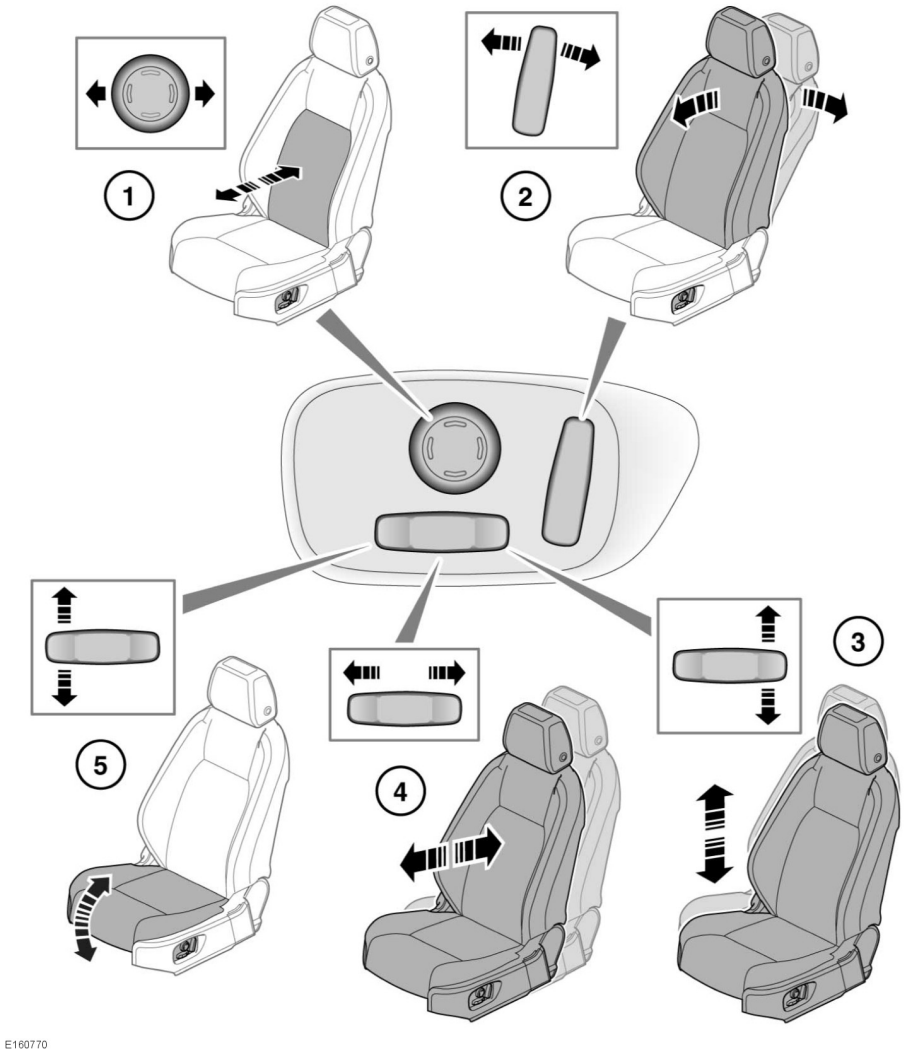

E162462

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

For information on how to adjust the front head restraint, see **29, FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

**Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving; doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

## ELECTRIC SEATS




1. Lumbar support adjustment.
2. Seatback angle adjustment.
3. Height adjustment.
4. Forward and rearward adjustment.
5. Cushion angle adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the Smart key must be inside the vehicle.

For information on how to adjust the front head restraints, see **29, FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

**Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving; doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

## RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for and remove any obstructions.

Once any obstructions have been removed, the seat adjustment mechanism can be reset as follows:

Operate the button again to continue the stalled adjustment. When seat movement resumes, hold the button until the end of travel in that direction has been reached. Seat adjustment can now be carried out as normal.

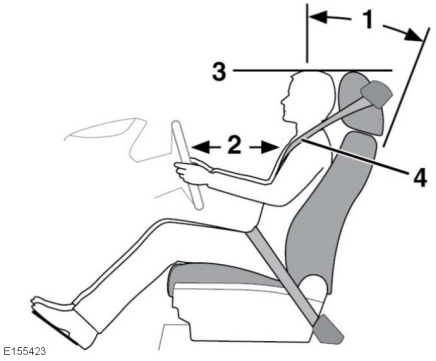
***Note:*** *If no obstructions can be seen, but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

**The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.**

**Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.**

The seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components will give you greater protection. Therefore, you should always observe the following points.



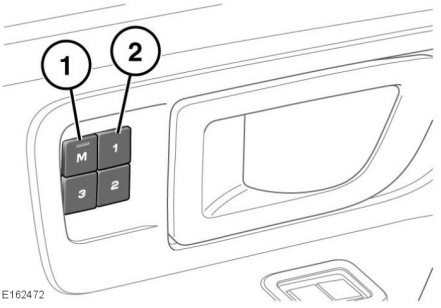

1. Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 250 mm (10 in) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with your arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.

Make sure your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

## DRIVING POSITION MEMORY

The front seat and exterior mirror positions can be saved to the vehicle's memory.

Once you have adjusted the power-operated driver's seat and the exterior mirrors, the vehicle can memorise the settings for future use. See **68, EXTERIOR MIRRORS**.




1. On the driver's door, press the memory store button (**M**) to activate the memory function. The switch indicator will illuminate.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. **Memory (1, 2 or 3) Settings Saved** will be displayed in the Message centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been saved to the memory.

   ***Note:*** *A seat position will be saved to the memory, only during the 5 second active period.*

   ***Note:*** *Any existing settings will be over-written when a new position is saved to the memory.*

   To recall a saved position, press the relevant preset button (**1**, **2** or **3**). **Memory (1, 2 or 3) Recalled** will be displayed in the Message centre.

## EASY ENTRY/EXIT

When Easy entry/exit is enabled, the driver's seat will automatically lower when the ignition is switched off and the door is opened. Upon returning to the vehicle, when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is turned on, the seat will return to its previously set position.

This feature can be enabled/disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

## FOLDING THE REAR SEATS

**Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly.**

**Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances.**

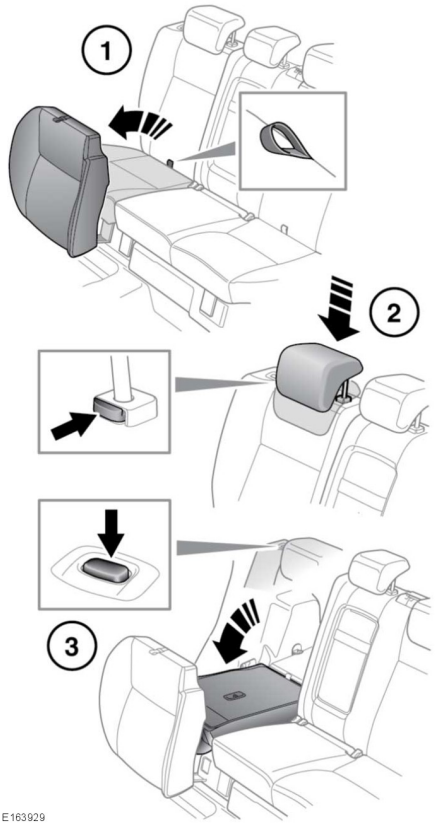
**Make sure that when the seatback is raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged.**

**When raising the rear seatbacks, make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats.**

**Make sure the head restraints are raised to the correct position before the seats are used by a passenger.**

## FOLDING AND RAISING THE FIXED SEATS

The split folding rear seats can be folded completely to accommodate large loads, or partially to accommodate large loads and still retain seating for passengers.




Fold part or all of the seat, as follows:

1. Pull the strap on the required cushion(s), to raise to the vertical position.
2. Fully lower the head restraints.
3. Press the seatback release button(s), then lower the seatback(s) until locked into place.

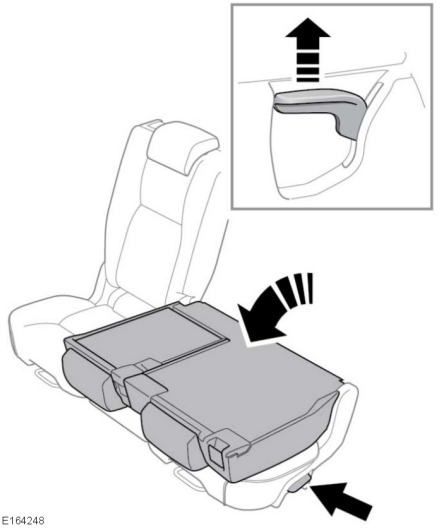
To raise the rear seat(s), follow the lowering process in reverse.

**Make sure that when the seatback(s) is raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged. If the seatback(s) is not fully locked in place, red markers will be visible around the seatback buttons.**

Adjust the head restraint(s).

## FOLDING AND RAISING THE SLIDING SEATS

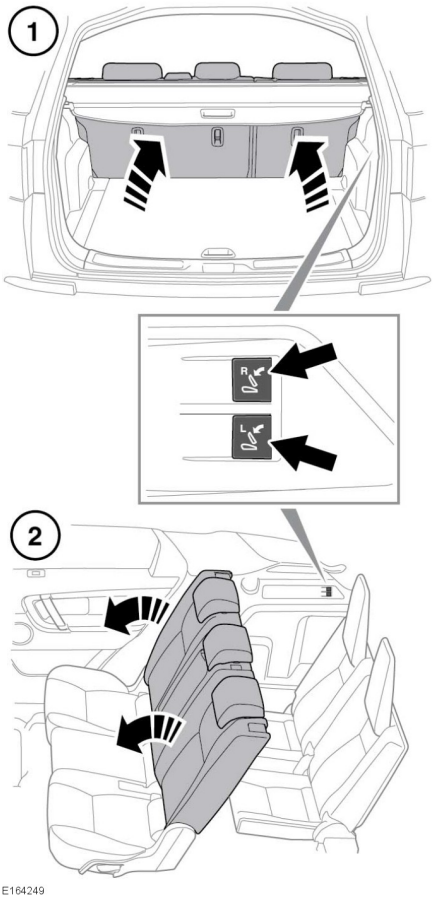
The split folding rear seats can be folded completely to accommodate large loads, or partially to accommodate large loads and still retain seating for passengers.



E164248

To fold a second row seatback: Lift the lever on the side of the seat and pull the seatback forwards until it locks into the lowered position.

To raise the seatback: Lift the lever to unlock the seatback and then lift until it is locked firmly in the upright position.




E164249

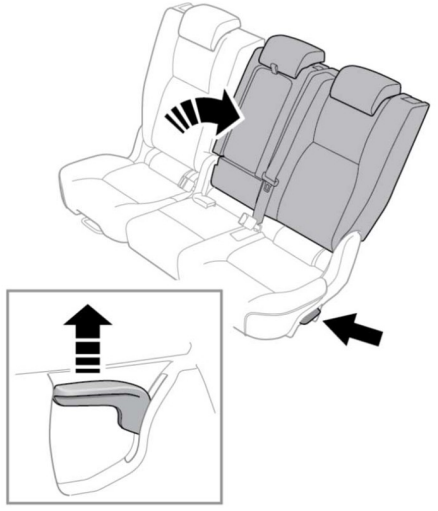
The second row seatbacks can be folded from inside the loadspace (**1**), or by the passengers occupying the third row seats (**2**):

- Pull back on the switch to release the seatback locking mechanism for the Right (**R**) or Left (**L**) side seatback.

  ***Note:*** *The switches will only operate when the vehicle is stationary and the tailgate is open.*

- Push forward on the unlocked seatback to lower it into the folded position.

To reset: Lift the seatback into the upright locked position using the lever on the side of the seat. Make sure the seatback locks firmly into the upright position.



E164250

To recline the second row seatback: Lift the lever on the side of the seat and push the seatback into the recline position.

To reset the seatback into the upright position: Lift the lever and pull the seatback forward into the upright position. Make sure the seatback locks firmly into the upright position.

E164260

To fold the centre of the seatback: Press the release button on the top of the seatback, then fold the centre of the seatback forwards into the lowered position.

To reset into the upright position: Lift the centre of the seatback until it locks firmly into the upright position.

***Note:*** *The second row centre seatbelt incorporates a locking feature to prevent the seatbelt from being pulled out too far when the seatback is folded flat. To reset this feature after folding the seat and returning to the upright position, pull the belt twice, the seatbelt will then operate as normal.*

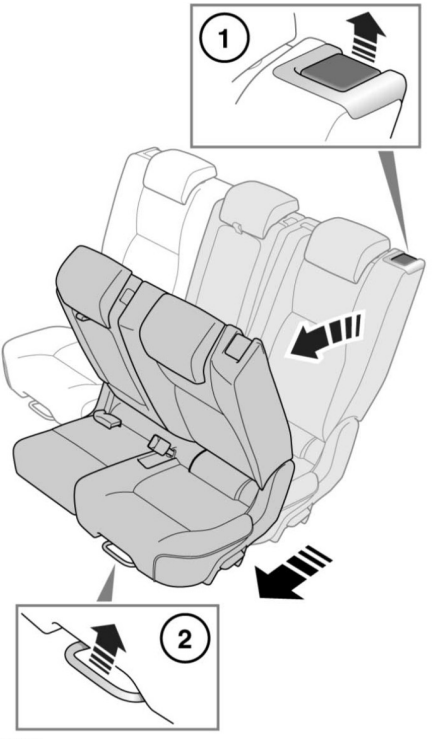
E164261

To move a rear seat forward or back:

- Lift the bar at the front of the rear seat. Then slide the rear seat into the required position.
- Release the bar and make sure the rear seat is locked firmly in position.

## ACCESS POSITION (7 seat vehicle)

**The vehicle must not be driven with the rear seats in the access position. Motion of the vehicle could cause the seatback to fall forwards suddenly, causing injury.**




E163645

To tilt the seatback forwards: Pull the lever on the top of the seatback upwards (**1**) to release the locking mechanism, and then move the seatback forwards into the tilt position.

To move the seat forwards: Pull the lever on the front of the seat upwards (**2**) to release the locking mechanism, and then move the seat forwards.

**When returning the seat from the access position, make sure nothing is trapped beneath the returning seat.**

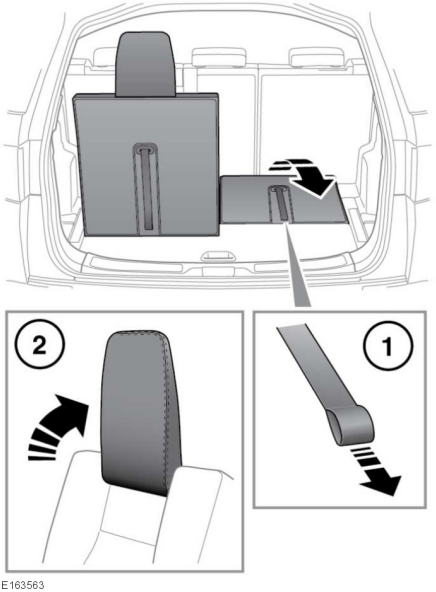
**Make sure that when the seatback and seat are returned to the pre-access position, the locking mechanisms are fully engaged. Physically test to make sure that the seat and seatback is secure before driving.**

## FOLDING AND RAISING THE THIRD ROW SEATS

**The head restraint must always be raised when using the third row seats.**

**When raising the rear seats, make sure that seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats.**

**Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering the third row seat.**



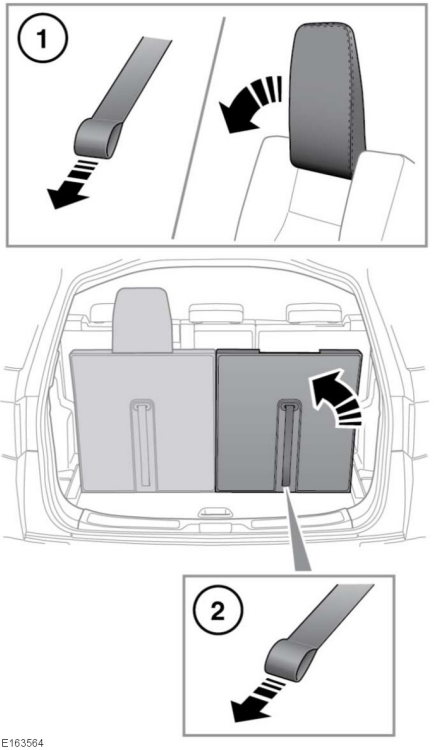

E163563

To raise a third row seat:

1. From inside the loadspace: On the seat to be raised, pull the strap on the rear of the seat, to lift the seat into the raised position.

   ***Note:*** *The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when raising the seat.*

2. From inside the vehicle: Lift the head restraint, until it locks into the upright position.




E163564

To fold a third row seat:

1. From inside the loadspace: Pull the strap on the rear of the seat to be folded, to release the head restraint locking mechanism and then manually fold the head restraint forward.

2. To fold the seat: Pull the strap again to release the seat locking mechanism, and then fold the seat forwards into the stowed position.

   ***Note:*** *The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when lowering the seat.*

**Instructional video - Folding and raising the third row seats.**

E166650

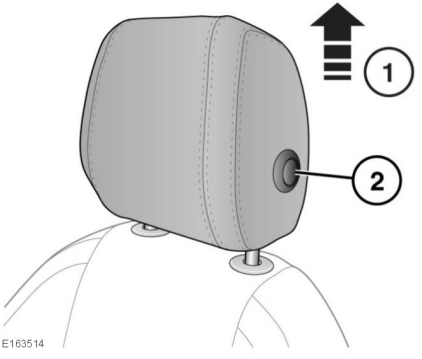
## FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

**Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.**

**Do not drive, or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.**

**Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.**

**Always store a removed head restraint securely.**




1. Move the head restraint up to the required position.
2. To move the restraint downwards, press the button on the side of the head restraint and move the restraint to the required position.

***Note:*** *Head restraints fitted with Rear seat entertainment screens must NOT be removed.*

2 people are required when removing a front head restraint.

To remove the head restraint:

1. Move the head restraint to the upper most position.
2. Using 2 hands, press down on each of the collars on the top of the seat to engage hidden buttons inside the seat.
3. While the collars are being pressed down, the second person should lift out the head restraint.

Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the head restraint:

1. Press the button on the side of the head restraint and push the stems into the restraint as far as they will go.
2. Line the stems up with the hole in the collars and push down until both stems engage into the locked position.

## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

**Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.**

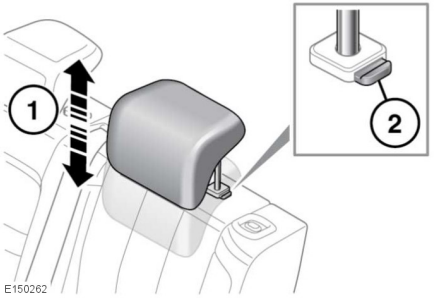
**Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.**

**Always store a removed restraint securely.**

# Head restraints

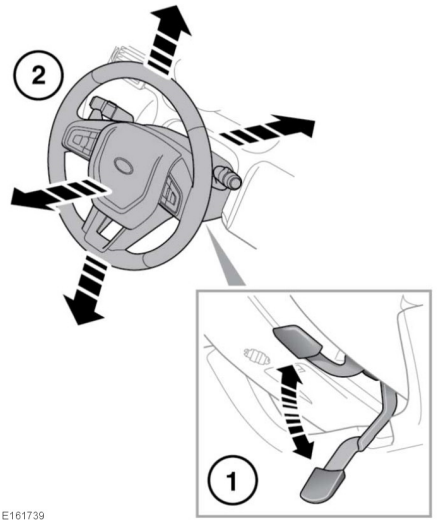
The head restraints can be removed, if required (e.g., to fit larger child seats). To remove a head restraint, first raise the head restraint to its uppermost position. With the adjusting collar pressed in, lift the restraint out of the seatback.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.




1. To raise, pull the head restraint upwards.
2. To lower, press in the adjusting collar and push down on the head restraint.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



E161739

**Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion.**

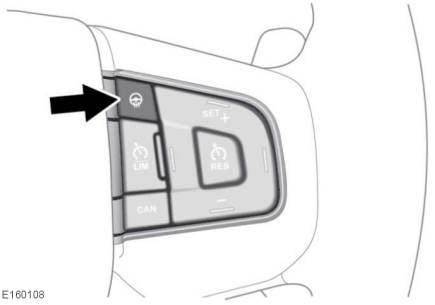
1. Move the lever fully down to unlock the column. When the steering has been adjusted to the desired position, move the lever fully up to re-lock the column.
2. The steering column can be adjusted, up, down, in or out.

## POWER STEERING

A fault with the power steering system is indicated by a message in the Message centre, accompanied by an amber warning lamp. See **53, GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**. A reduction in power steering assistance may be experienced. The fault may be caused by overheating due to extensive steering inputs or high ambient temperatures.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has been allowed to cool. If full steering assistance does not return, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL

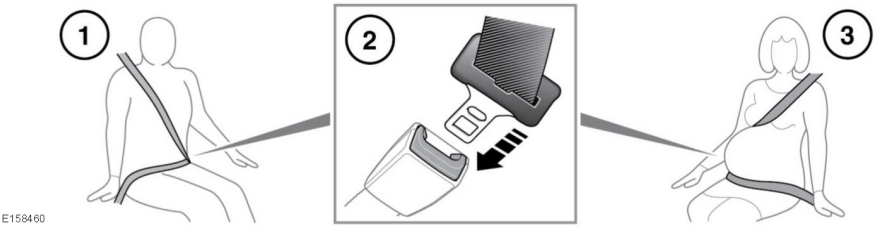


E160108

Press to switch on the steering wheel heating. Press again to turn off.

***Note:*** *If the steering wheel heater is operating when ECO Program is selected, the steering wheel heater will switch off automatically. The steering wheel heater can be switched on again but this may affect the fuel economy of the vehicle.*

## USING THE SEAT BELTS




1. **Putting on a seat belt**: Draw the belt out smoothly, making sure that the seat and your position on the seat are correct. When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of your shoulder.
   Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.
2. **Fastening a seat belt**: With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard.
   To release the seat belt, press the red button.

   ***Note:*** *When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.*
3. **Seat belt use during pregnancy**: Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

⚠ **Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.**

⚠ **Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.**

⚠ **Do not use comfort clips or devices that would create slack in the seat belt system.**

⚠ **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.**

**Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.**

**Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer. Ensure that any belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce slack.**

**Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.**

**Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's neck will strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted and with the seatbacks upright.**

**Never place anything between you and the seat belt. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.**

**The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. It does not replace them. Seat belts must always be worn.**

**Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt. In an impact, the pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.**

**Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

**Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal set belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.**

## SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant or a third row seat occupant.

**The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be renewed. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, renewed by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## SEAT BELT SAFETY

**Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.**

**The belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

**It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact, even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.**

**If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.**

**Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt.**

**Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short.**

**Never wear just the lap belt, or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.**

**When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.**

## SEAT BELT CARE

**The seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

**It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.**

**If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.**

**Care must be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.**

**When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.**

## SEAT BELT CHECKS

***Note:*** *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, wear to the webbing and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.

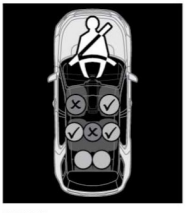
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

⚠ **If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.**

## SEAT BELT REMINDER

Seat belt reminder commences when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's belt is unbuckled. Dependent on the market, an audible chime sounds and the warning indicator in the Instrument panel illuminates. See **54, SEAT BELT (RED)**. The visual and audible warnings applicable to the Seat belt reminder feature are market dependent, to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change, depending on whether the vehicle is stationary or when the vehicle's speed exceeds a predetermined threshold. In certain markets, the Seat belt reminder, feature also applies to the front passenger seat.

The Message centre also displays a front and rear Seat belt reminder, that warns the driver when the seat belt of any occupied seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.



E159827

A graphic displayed in the Message centre indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey, and also when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey. Each seating position is represented by a passenger icon, the colour and symbol of which indicates the seat belt status:

- Tick/green - seat belt, in the indicated position, is fastened.
- Cross/red - seat belt, in the indicated position, has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is on. This indicator will turn grey after 30 seconds.
- Grey - seat belt not fastened.

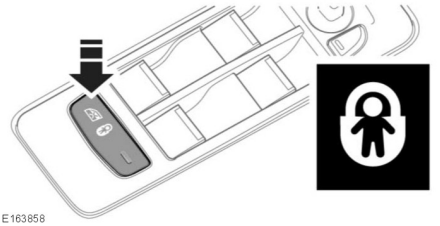
***Note:*** *The indicators will be displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, e.g., a seat belt is unfastened or fastened or a door is opened and then closed.*

In addition, an audible warning will sound under the following conditions:

- The seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened, or is unfastened during a journey.
- A rear seat belt is unfastened.

***Note:*** *If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the Seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.*

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS




If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

Press the switch to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator will illuminate when active and a message will display in the Message centre.

To switch off, press the switch again. The LED will extinguish and a message will display in the Message centre.

## CHILD SEATS

**For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle's seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rear-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.**

**Do not use a forward-facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of 2, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.**

**Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child.**

**Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.**

**Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.**

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat, appropriate to their age and size.

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national legislation permits this), Land Rover recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Disable the front passenger airbag. See **43, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.
- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion angle adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child restraint.

**Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

**NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**


E150265

This symbol, affixed to the front door B-post on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.


E145193

This symbol, affixed to the passenger side sun-visor, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

**Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.**

Information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest recommendation.

***Note:*** *The information contained in the following tables may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

***Note:*** *Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.*

***Note:*** *The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.*

| **Seating positions** | **Mass group** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months** | **0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months** | **I = 9-18 kg (20-40 lb) 9 months to 4 years** | **II = 15-25 kg (33-55 lb 4-9 years** | **III = 22-36 kg (49-80 lb) 8-12 years** |
| Front passenger* | U | U | U | U | U |
| Second row seats** | U | U | U | U | U |
| Third row seats*** | X | X | X | UF | UF |

U = Suitable for universal category restraints, approved for this mass group.

X = Not suitable for the use of child restraints of this mass group.

UF = Suitable for universal forward facing child restraints of this mass group.

* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **43, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**. The front passenger seat should be positioned fully rearward, the seat cushion to its highest position and the seatback adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.

** For vehicles fitted with sliding second row seats:

- Adjust the seatback to the upright position.
- Adjust the seat to the rear most position, unless the third row seats are occupied.

*** Adjust the second row seatback to the upright position and move the seat forward, to give sufficient clearance to allow fitment of the third row child restraint.

**ISOFIX Child Seat Positioning**

| Mass group as shown on child restraint | Size class | Fixtures | Second row outboard* | Recommended child restraint system |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Carry-cot | F | ISO/L1 | X | - |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X | - |
| **0**<br>Up to 10 kg (22 lb)<br>(0-9 months) | E | ISO/R1 | IL | Britax/Römer Baby-Safe Plus with Baby-Safe ISOFIX Base |
| **0+**<br>Up to 13 kg (29 lb)<br>(0-18 months) | E | ISO/R1 | IL | |
| | D | ISO/R2 | IL | - |
| | C | ISO/R3 | IL | - |
| **I**<br>9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb)<br>(9 months - 4 years) | D | ISO/R2 | IL | - |
| | C | ISO/R3 | IL | - |
| | B | ISO/F2 | IUF | Britax/Römer Duo Plus |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | IUF | |
| | A | ISO/F3 | IUF | |
| **II/III**<br>15 to 36 kg (33 to 80 lb) 4-9 years | - | - | - | - |

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category, approved for use in the mass group.

IL = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.

*For vehicles fitted with sliding second row seats:

- Adjust the seatback to the upright position.
- Adjust the seat to the rear most position, unless the third row seats are occupied.

***Note:*** *ISOFIX anchorages are provided for second row outer seating positions. ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions at these locations only.*

## RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

| Child size/age | Recommended seat |
|---|---|
| Groups 0 and 0+ | Britax/Römer Baby-Safe plus with Baby-Safe ISOFIX Base |
| Group I | Britax/Römer Duo Plus |
| Group II and III | Britax/Römer Kid Plus |

## CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the restraint system manufacturer's instructions.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every journey.
- Make sure all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX seat (if applicable to seat type).
- If a head restraint interferes with the fitting of a child restraint, remove the head restraint and stow it securely. See **29, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.
  Always refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible renew the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.
- Make sure that any belt positioning sliders on the seat belts are adjusted such that there is no slack in the lap belt after fastening.

## BOOSTER SEATS

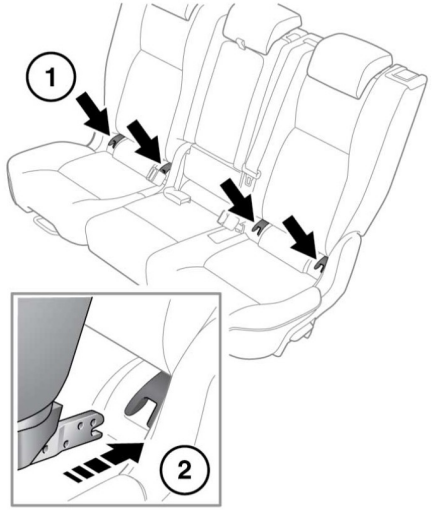
In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat but is still too small to safely use just the 3-point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

## INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS

⚠ **Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.**

**If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.**

ISOFIX anchorage child seats can only be fitted to the outer seat positions on the second row of seats.




E163865

To install an ISOFIX child seat:

1. Locate the ISOFIX anchor bars and, if fitted, remove the covers.
2. Slide the child seat into position and attach the locking mechanism to the ISOFIX anchor bars.

If an upper tether is fitted to the child seat, see **40, INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should still check the anchor points visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

***Note:*** *Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.*

## INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

**WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

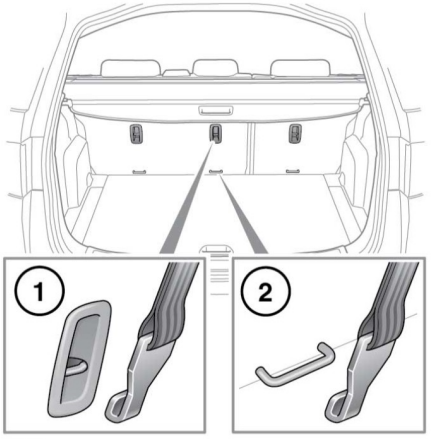
**Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.**

**When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and beneath the head restraint.**

**If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).**

Your vehicle may be equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seats. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

***Note:*** *A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat.*



E163146

Tether strap anchor point locations:

1. Fixed rear seats.
2. Sliding rear seats.

Install the tether straps as follows:

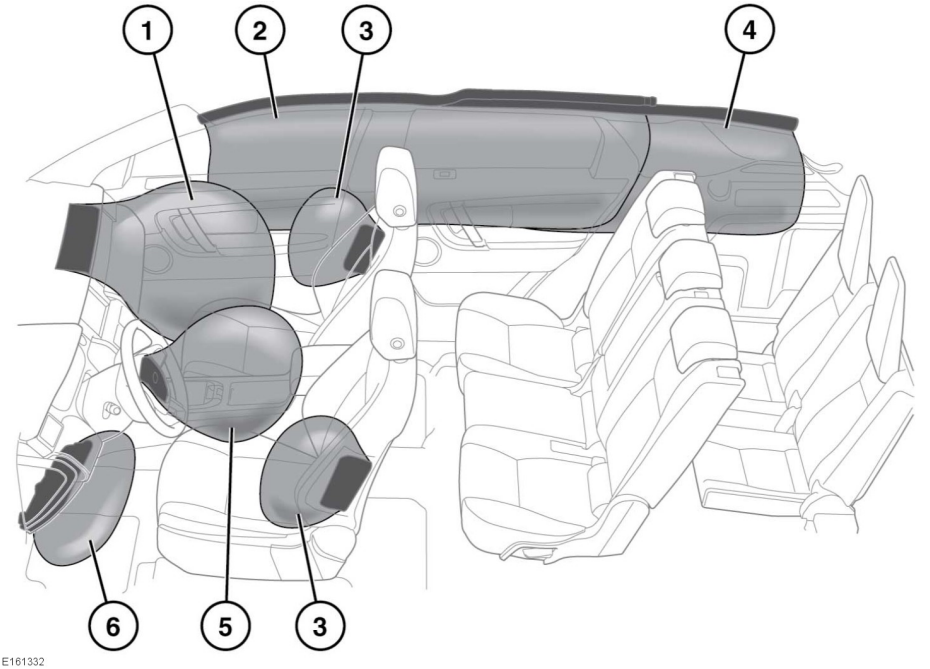
1. Install the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seatback, beneath the head restraint and between the seatback and the loadspace cover.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure the tether strap hook is facing the correct way, as illustrated.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

***Note:*** *For 5 seat vehicles fitted with sliding seats, the loadspace floor should be lifted and moved rearwards. This is to allow access to the tether anchor points. The loadspace floor should be replaced after attaching the tether straps.*

**Australian vehicles only**

For 5 and 7 seat vehicles fitted with sliding rear seats, the seats shall be adjusted to the foremost position prior to attaching the tether straps. The seats should then be returned to the rearmost position to aid fitment of the child seat.

## AIRBAGS




E161332

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Curtain airbags.
3. Side airbags.
4. Curtain airbags (7 seat vehicles only).
5. Driver's airbag.
6. Knee-bolster airbag.

***Note:*** *The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.*

Always contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.
- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.

## AIRBAG OPERATION

**For the airbags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible, for examination and repair.**

**Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of their person, or any objects, in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. Only use approved accessories (e.g., seat covers).**

**Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side airbags.**

**Airbags inflate at high speeds. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as is practical.**

**Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.**

**Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons, familiar with the operation of and requirements for vehicles fitted with a Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised repairer.**

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material, covering seat-mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Land Rover, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to make sure the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

The airbags and Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

**High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.**

**The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.**

## DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

***Note:*** *Disabling the passenger airbag is market dependent.*

The passenger's front airbag can be switched on and off, using the interactive controls on the Instrument panel when the vehicle is stationary. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

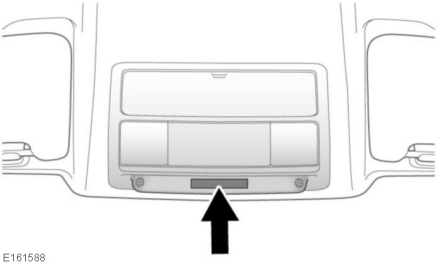
**The passenger airbag should be disabled when a child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.**

**Crash test data and statistics show that the safest place for a child to be restrained is in a child seat correctly fitted to the vehicle's rear seat.**

**Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.**

Select **Passenger Airbag** from the **Vehicle Set-up** menu, located in the **Main Menu**.

The displayed text and diagram will show the current **Passenger Airbag On** or **Off** status. Select **Change Setting** to choose either **On** or **Off**.




The warning lamp, mounted in the roof console, will display the operational status of the passenger front airbag, as shown in the following table.

| Setting | Passenger airbag status | Airbag status indicator |
|---|---|---|
| Off | Disabled | PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF |
| On | Activated | ON PASSENGER AIRBAG* |

* Displays for 60 seconds, then extinguishes.

***Note:*** *The Instrument panel will also display a warning for 4 seconds every time the ignition is switched on.*

**As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be turned on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

**When checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, make sure the ignition is switched on and the warning lamp bulb check period of 8 seconds has elapsed.**

**Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the Airbag warning lamp illuminates continuously with the ignition on. See 55, AIRBAG (AMBER).**

**The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.**

## FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger, driver and knee bolster airbags are designed to protect the front seat occupants in the event of an impact.

## SIDE AIRBAGS

These are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

## CURTAIN AIRBAGS

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

## AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

**When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. If breathing difficulty is experienced, leave the vehicle if possible, or open the windows or doors to allow fresh air in.**

**Airbags inflate at high speed and can cause injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure all occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats and position the seats as far back as is practicable.**

**Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise, which may cause discomfort, and temporary loss of hearing.**

**After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.**

## AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The airbag warning lamp is displayed in the Instrument panel and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is turned on. See **55, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

**If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.**

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- The warning lamp (following the bulb check period) fails to extinguish within 8 seconds of the ignition being turned on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time other than the bulb check, when the ignition is on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Front and third row seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Airbag wiring harness.
- Airbag status indicator.

## AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

**Do not attempt to service, repair, renew, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

**Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.**

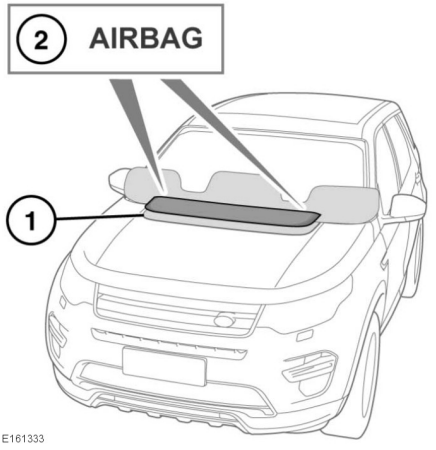
All of the following operations should be carried out only by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified person:

- Removal, or repair, of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

## DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

## PEDESTRIAN AIRBAG




If your vehicle is fitted with a Pedestrain airbag, it is located beneath a panel in the bonnet (**1**).

To verify that a Pedestrian airbag is fitted to the vehicle, the word **AIRBAG** is located in 2 places on the rear of the panel (**2**).

In the event of a frontal impact with a pedestrian, sensors in the front bumper react and the pedestrian airbag inflates. The sensors will operate at speeds between 25 to 50 km/h (15.5 to 31 mph).

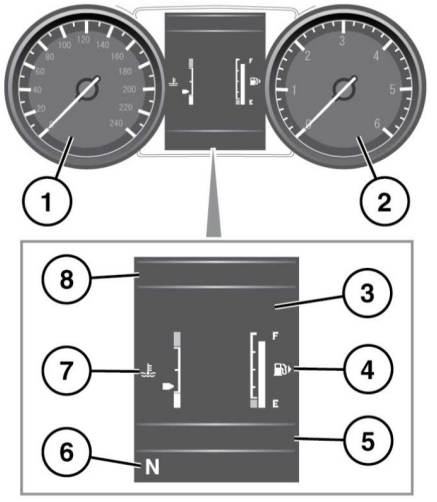
If there is a fault with the Pedestrian airbag, the message **Check Pedestrian System** will appear in the message centre. In this event the vehicle should be taken to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the fault investigated.

**Do not carry out any modifications to the front bumper, or fit any accessories to the bumper or the bonnet, that has not been approved by Jaguar Land Rover, as this could affect the operation of the sensors and/or the airbag.**

**If damage of any kind is sustained to the front bumper, this should be inspected by a Dealer/ Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.**

For instructions on what to do after a collision where the pedestrian airbag has deployed. See **244, AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM**.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL




E160496

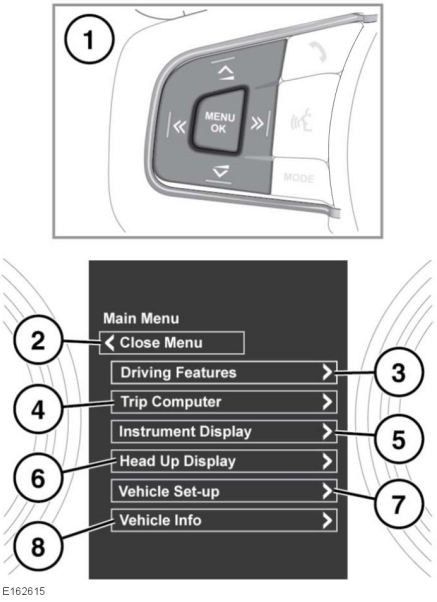
1. Speedometer.
2. Tachometer.
3. Message centre and menu display.
4. Fuel gauge: See **55, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

   Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. The resultant misfire can seriously damage the catalytic converter.
5. ECO data system status display for the accelerator pedal, engine revolution speed and brake pedal application.
   Also the trip computer information is displayed in this area, see **50, TRIP COMPUTER**.
6. Gear selector status.
7. Temperature gauge: If the temperature gauge pointer moves into the red section at the top of the scale, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

   Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

   ***Note:*** *At high engine temperatures, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the air conditioning may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with cooling.*
8. Warning lamps and indicators display: The other warning lamps are displayed within the speedometer and tachometer.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU




A number of vehicle features and display settings may be configured via the Instrument panel menus.

To display the instrument panel menu, press the **MENU** button on the steering wheel.

To navigate through the instrument panel menus, operate the menu control buttons on the steering wheel.

1. Steering wheel menu control buttons.
2. Select **Close Menu** to close and return to the **Main Menu**.
3. Access the **Driving Features** menu.
4. Access the **Trip Computer** menu.
5. Access the **Instrument Display** menu.

   ***Note:*** *Some personalisation options may not be available in all markets.*
6. Access the **Head Up Display (HUD)** menu.
7. Access the **Vehicle Set-up** menu.

   **Before making any changes to the vehicle set-up, you must make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant topics/sections of the handbook. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.**
8. Access the **Vehicle Info** menu.

   ***Note:*** *Can only be accessed when the engine is not running.*

## WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Do not ignore warning messages, take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.**
**If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.**

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than 1 message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds in order of priority.

***Note:*** *Messages are displayed in order of importance. High importance warning messages are given the highest priority.*

Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning, and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel.

## TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey, or series of journeys, until it is reset to zero.

There are 3 trip memories available, **A**, **B** and **Auto**. You can specify which trip memory is viewable, using the Instrument panel menu.

## USING THE TRIP COMPUTER


E150760

A short press (one second or less) or a series of short presses of the ¡ button will change the trip computer display. The options available are:

- Date and Odometer.
- Trip distance.
- Trip average speed.
- Trip average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous (short term average) fuel consumption.
- Range available from remaining fuel.
- ECO program instantaneous driving style rating. This will automatically be displayed when ECO program is selected, see **141, ECO PROGRAM**.
- Blank display.

***Note:*** *These options can be enabled/disabled via the Instrument panel menu (Select* ***Trip Computer*** *and then* ***Trip content****), except for the ECO data system status display and the Date and Odometer options.*

To reset the trip computer values to zero, press and hold the ¡ button for 2 seconds.

To reset the fuel consumption value, press and hold the button until the display clears.

The distance, average speed and average fuel economy values for trip **A** and trip **B** can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the trip that you wish to reset, then press and hold the ¡ button until the message **Resetting trip** is displayed.

It is not possible to manually reset the **Auto** trip memory. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, to record a continuous journey, or removed. Press the button for longer than one second, when **Auto** trip memory values for distance, average speed and average fuel economy are displayed, then **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** will appear on the screen. Press the button for longer than one second, and the previous trip information will be added to, or removed from, the current trip and the new total will be displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

## TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

## RANGE

This shows the predicted distance (kilometres or miles) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption and driving style remain constant.

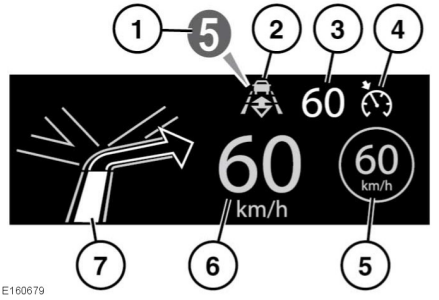
## METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu of the Message centre. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *The temperature display can be changed between* ***°C*** *(Celsius) and* ***°F*** *(Fahrenheit), independently of Metric or Imperial units.*

## HEAD UP DISPLAY

The Head-Up Display (HUD) feature projects driver information onto the inside of the windscreen.




The information displayed is as follows:

1. Current gear selected.
2. Follow mode is active. See **135, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE**.
3. Cruise control set speed.
4. Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active.
5. Traffic sign recognition, identified speed limit. See **147, TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION**.
6. Current vehicle speed.
7. Turn-by-turn navigation instructions.

The HUD can be controlled from the **Head-Up Display** option in the Instrument panel menu. For more information, see **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Once selected, the menu offers a number of options, including:

- Turning the HUD on/off.
- Selecting which information is displayed on the inside of the windscreen.
- The position of the display.
- The brightness of the display.

It is important that the position of the display is set correctly. The correct position is dependent on a number of conditions, including the height of the driver and the seat position.

***Note:*** *Before setting the position of the HUD, make sure that the driver's seat is correctly positioned. See* ***21, SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION****. The HUD level should be set horizontally, within the driver's vision.*

To set the display position, select **HUD Position** from the **Head-Up Display** menu and follow the on-screen instructions. Use the driver's seat memory store button (**M**) to store your preferences. See **21, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

The brightness of the display is set automatically to suit the ambient light conditions. Brightness can be manually adjusted to your preferred level by selecting **HUD Brightness** from the **Head-Up Display** menu. Follow the on-screen instructions and then press **OK** to confirm.

The HUD is linked to the Trip computer units settings. If fuel economy is set to mpg, the HUD will be in miles. If fuel economy is set to km/l, the HUD will be in kilometres. See **51, METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY**.

***Note:*** *In extreme temperatures, the HUD takes a longer time to display from start-up. This is to make sure that the HUD always runs at its optimum temperature.*

***Note:*** *It may not be possible to see the full HUD image, while wearing polarised sunglasses.*

***Note:*** *Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is positioned above the Instrument panel, next to the windscreen.*

If cleaning is required, see **199, INSTRUMENT PANEL, TOUCH SCREEN AND AUDIO SYSTEM** and follow the same cleaning instructions.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance before continuing.

AMBER and YELLOW warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

GREEN and BLUE lamps within the instrument panel indicate system status.

## LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g., high beam headlamps and direction indicators).*

***Note:*** *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

## CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)

Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the Message centre.

## GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)

Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the Message centre.

## LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)

If the lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level if necessary. Start the engine; if the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

## BRAKE (RED)

Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

## PARKING BRAKE (RED)

Illuminates when the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is correctly applied. If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

## BATTERY CHARGE (RED)

Illuminates as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

## SEAT BELT (RED)

Illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied front seat belt is unbuckled. The lamp will extinguish when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

***Note:*** *Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See* ***32, USING THE SEAT BELTS****.*

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)

If the Lane departure warning system detects that the vehicle has crossed either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate direction indicator, then the relevant lane will illuminate red. This will also be accompanied by a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

## ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)

Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission. The vehicle can be driven, but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

## BRAKE (AMBER)

Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system.

The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)

Flashes when DSC is active.

If there is a fault, it will remain illuminated and the Message centre will display **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**. The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)


Illuminates when DSC is switched off. A chime will sound and a confirmation message will be displayed in the Message centre.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)


Illuminates briefly as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance urgently.

## AIRBAG (AMBER)

Illuminates as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on, and extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check, or when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)

Illuminates when there is a system fault. The headlamps will still operate, but without this feature operating correctly. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)

Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

## GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

## AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)


Illuminates when the Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) is active.

## FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)

Illuminates when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is in Follow mode.

## EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)

Illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

## LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)

Illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler cap.

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)

The warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a message in the Message centre, to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp will flash to indicate a system fault.

## GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)

The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The shift indicator will not illuminate while Cruise control is active and not being overridden by pressing the throttle pedal.

***Note:*** *This warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.*

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)

Illuminates continuously when Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected and HDC operating conditions are met. See **144, HDC CONTROLS**.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

## CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)

Illuminates when Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active.

## FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)

Illuminates when Forward alert is active.

## SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)

Illuminates when the side lamps are switched on.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)

Illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)

The appropriate warning lamp will flash when the direction indicators are operated.

## TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)

Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp will flash in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

***Note:*** *If the attached and connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.*

## AUTO HIGH BEAM (GREEN)

Illuminates when the Auto high beam feature has switched on the high beams.

## INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)

Illuminates when the engine is shut down by the Intelligent stop/start system.

***Note:*** *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, for example, the ignition warning lamp, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the Intelligent stop/start system.*

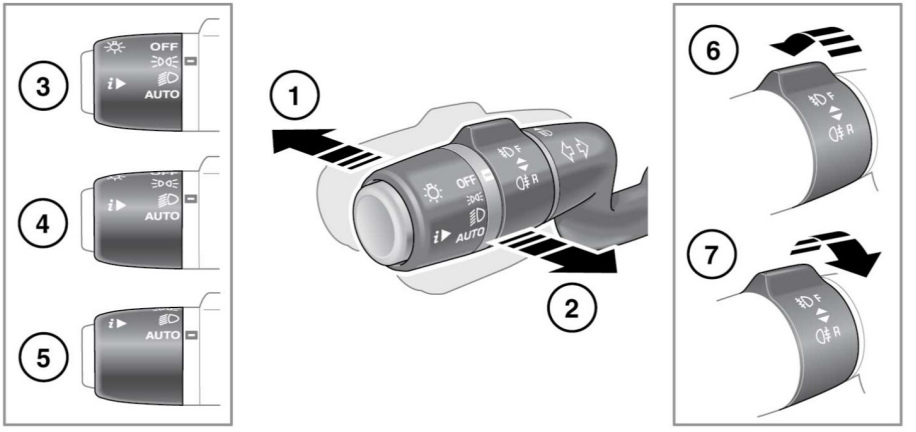
## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)

Illuminates grey to confirm the Lane departure warning system is enabled. Recognised lane markings will illuminate green, otherwise they will illuminate grey.

## HIGH BEAM (BLUE)

Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

## LIGHTING CONTROL




E160313

1. With the headlamps on, push the control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **57, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

   ***Note:*** *Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.*

2. Pull the control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam will remain on for as long as the switch is held.
3. Side lamps: Rotate the control to this position to switch the side lamps on. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **56, SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)**.
4. Headlamps: Rotate the control to this position to switch the headlamps on.
5. **AUTO**: With Auto lamps selected, when the ambient light fades and the ignition is on, the side lamps, tail lamps, dipped beam headlamps and licence plate lamps will switch on automatically. Headlamp courtesy delay, Auto high beam and the Windscreen wipers detection may also be activated.

   ***Note:*** *Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the Auto lamps to activate.*

6. Front fog lamps: Will operate only while side lamps, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **56, FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)**.
   To turn off the front fog lamps: Turn the collar away from the steering wheel again and release.
7. Rear fog lamps: Will operate only while side lamps, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release. The Instrument panel warning lamp will illuminate. See **55, REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)**.
   To turn off the rear fog lamps: Turn the collar towards the steering wheel again and release.

In the event of a bulb failure, it should be noted that some bulbs are renewable only by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer. See **190, CHANGING A BULB**.

**Instructional video - Auto lamps.**

E166653

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

The Daytime running lamps are LED lamps.

With the lighting control in the OFF position or in the AUTO position, while the lighting conditions do not require the headlamps to be on, then the Daytime running lamps will switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (P) (automatic transmission).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied - market dependent.

Unless required or prohibited by law, the Daytime running lamps feature can be disabled or enabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## HEADLAMP COURTESY DELAY

This feature operates whenever the lighting control is in the AUTO (**5**) position and the ignition is turned off. The headlamps will remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

***Note:*** *The time delay may be changed via the* ***Vehicle Set-up*** *menu. See* ***49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

The Courtesy delay can be switched off at any time, by pressing the headlamp button on the Smart key.

## AUTO HIGH BEAM

This feature of the Xenon lighting automatically selects and deselects the high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

***Note:*** *It is not recommended that Auto high beam is used while driving off road.*

For Auto high beam to become operational, the lighting control must be in the **AUTO** position (**5**), with dipped beam headlamps selected.

The Instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when Auto high beam is selected. See **56, AUTO HIGH BEAM (GREEN)**.

Auto high beam will activate only when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system will deactivate when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

To manually select high beam, move the control to the high beam position, as normal. To return to Auto high beam, move the control back to the central position.

To manually override to dipped beam from high beam, pull the control to the flash position (**2**) and Auto high beam will be cancelled. To return to Auto high beam, push the control to the high beam position (**1**) and then return it to the central position.

To turn off Auto high beam, turn the lighting control from **AUTO** to headlamps.

This feature can be disabled/enabled via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The following may affect the operation of Auto high beam:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, for example, cyclists or pedestrians.

- Adverse weather conditions, for example, rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central highway barrier.

***Note:*** *The system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to use the headlamps correctly at all times.*

***Note:*** *Make sure the forward-facing sensors on the back of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.*

## WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If Auto lamps is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lamps, tail lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lamps will automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

## HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

Misting of lamp lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. This will not affect the performance of the lamps and will clear during normal operation.

## HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

The headlamp beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

## HEADLAMP LEVELLING


E163032

Use the headlamp levelling control to account for vehicle loading changes. Press the switch to release and then rotate to the required position.

| Vehicle load | Switch position |
|---|---|
| Driver only | 0 |
| Driver and front seat passenger | 0 |
| Driver and passengers in all seats | 1 |
| Maximum gross vehicle weight | 2 |
| Driver and maximum rear axle load | 3 |

## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

With the headlamps on, the AFS will adjust the beams when cornering to provide an improved illumination in the direction of travel.

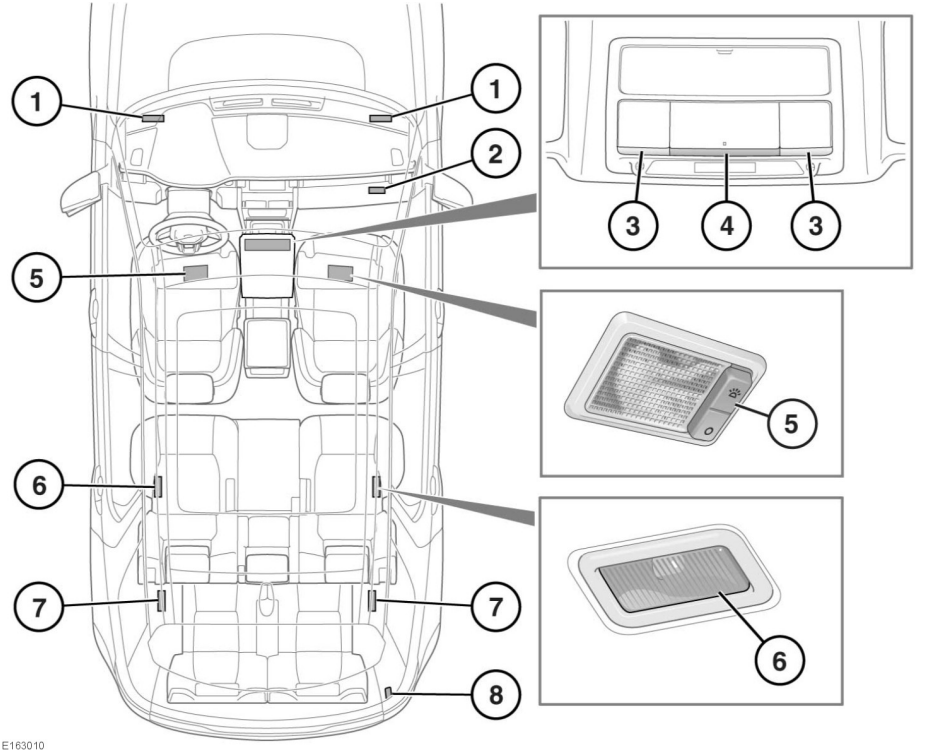
The AFS is deactivated when:

- Reverse (R) gear is selected.
- The vehicle is stationary.

If a system fault is detected, the headlamps will attempt to move to the central position and then remain stationary. The AFS warning indicator will illuminate to indicate that a fault is present. See **55, ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)**.

If the warning lamp illuminates, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS




E163010

1. Footwell lamps: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all of the doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked.
2. Glovebox lamp: Illuminates when the glovebox is opened.
3. Map reading lamps: Move a finger close to (or touch) the relevant lens to switch on/off.
4. Front interior lamp: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 60 seconds after all of the doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Move a finger close to (or touch) the lens to switch on and off manually. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to deactivate/activate automatic illumination.

   ***Note:*** *If you are wearing gloves, it may be necessary to touch the lens to operate the lamps.*
5. Sun visor lamps: Press the switch to turn on and off.

6. Rear interior/reading lamps: Illuminate when the doors are unlocked and extinguish 60 seconds after all of the doors are closed, when the engine starts or when the vehicle is locked. Press the switch to switch on and off manually. Touch the front courtesy lamp lens for approximately 2 seconds to deactivate/activate automatic illumination of the rear interior lamps.
7. Rear interior/reading lamps: As item 6, fitted to 7 seat vehicles only.
8. Loadspace lamp: Illuminates when the tailgate is opened.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

While the exterior lamps are turned on, the intensity of the interior switch illumination can be adjusted. See **290, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

On some vehicles the LED ambient lighting can be configured for colour and intensity through the Touch screen. Although the exterior lamps must be turned on while changes are being made, a 1 second preview of any changes made can be seen if the exterior lamps are turned off. See **80, EXTRA FEATURES**.

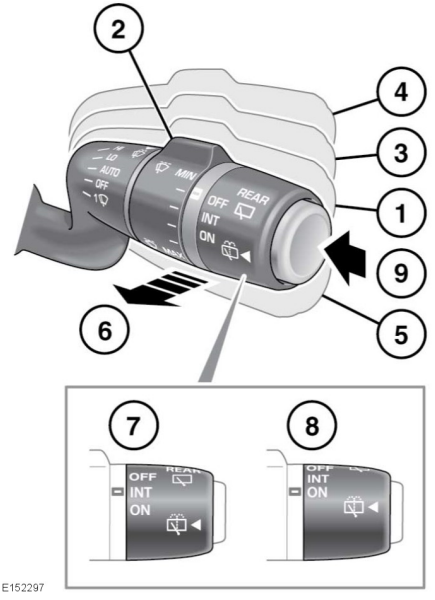
***Note:*** *Vehicles without configurable ambient lighting will illuminate the standard white light for the interior lamps.*

## WIPER OPERATION

Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen.

In freezing or hot conditions, make sure the wipers have not stuck to the glass. Use the winter park position to lift the wiper blades away from the screen. See **66, WINTER PARK POSITION**.

Remove any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the windscreen scuttle, before operating the wipers.




Vehicles with a rain sensor:

1. Automatic rain sensing mode: The front wipers will respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**).

   Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the automatic rain sensing system operates during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position the more responsive the system will become.
   When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system will perform a single wipe.
3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. A single wipe of the windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for 2 further wipes after the control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe will clear any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the control position.

   ***Note:*** *The front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open.*
7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency will increase with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.

9. Rear window wash/wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper will operate in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

Vehicles without a rain sensor:

1. Intermittent wipe: The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**).

   Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

2. Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes occur.

   ***Note:*** *Wipe frequency will increase with vehicle speed.*

3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. A single wipe of the windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for 2 further wipes after the control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe will clear any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the control position.

   ***Note:*** *The front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open.*

7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency will increase with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.
9. Rear window wash/wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper will operate in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

***Note:*** *When reverse gear is selected and the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper will activate.*

***Note:*** *The rear wiper will not operate while the tailgate is open.*

***Note:*** *If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended Land Rover screen cleaning paste. See* ***248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS****.*

***Note:*** *The windscreen will no longer be wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing function will degrade if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position will move the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See* ***195, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION****.*

***Note:*** *If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out will temporarily halt the wiper's operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.*

## RAIN SENSOR

The rain sensor (if fitted) is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen and automatically activate the windscreen wipers accordingly.

***Note:*** *Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.*

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper control to the **AUTO** position. The behaviour of the system may be adjusted to the driver's preference by rotating the collar (**2**).

***Note:*** *If the wiper control is turned to the **AUTO** position, the wipers will not operate if either of the front doors are open.*

***Note:*** *In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wiper controls are returned to the **OFF** position.*

## SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

### Front wipers

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting will be restored automatically.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted will also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.

This feature can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

### Rear wiper

The frequency of the intermittent rear wiper will increase when the vehicle's speed increases.

This feature can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe function is configured, the wipers will operate a few seconds after a wash/wipe cycle has finished, to clear any remaining drips from the windscreen.

This function can be enabled/disabled by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## WINTER PARK POSITION

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

The wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. This allows the wiper blades to be lifted away from the screen, while the vehicle is stationary, to limit the risk of freezing to the glass and to facilitate the removal of debris or obstructions, for example, snow, mud, leaves, etc. The Winter park position can be enabled/disabled from the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *Do not drive the vehicle with the wipers in the Winter park position. The wipers should always be reset to their normal park position before the vehicle is driven.*

## HEADLAMP WASHERS

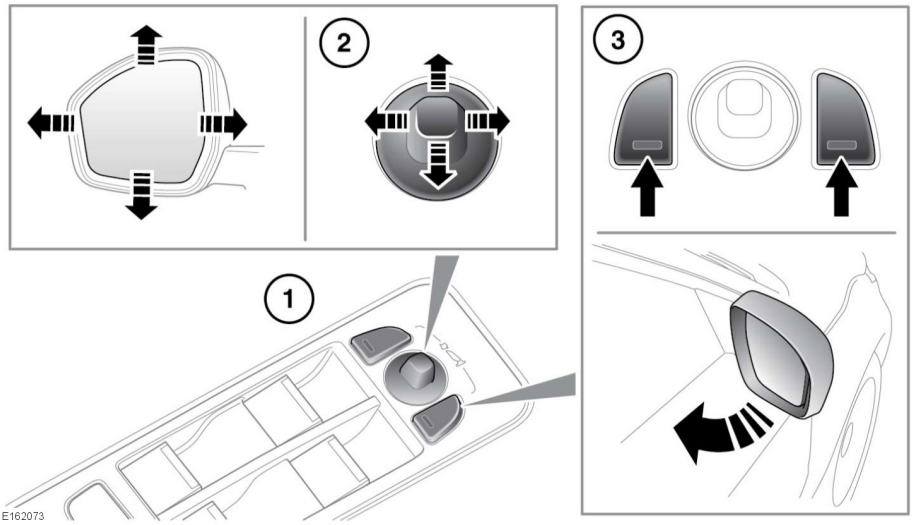
The optional headlamp power wash operates automatically with the windscreen wash and will operate only if the headlamps are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.

Headlamp wash operates every fourth operation of the screen washers, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

Switching the headlamps or the ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle. See **58, LIGHTING CONTROL**, or **108, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

***Note:*** *The headlamps are washed alternately to prevent the washer fluid from reducing the light output from both headlamps simultaneously.*

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS




1. Mirror selector switches: Press to select the left or right mirror.
2. Mirror adjustment switch: Move up/down/left or right to adjust the mirror's glass position.
3. Press both mirror selector switches together to fold/unfold the mirrors (power-fold option).

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is on and for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

***Note:*** *Power-fold will operate only if the vehicle's speed is below 113 km/h (70 mph).*

***Note:*** *The rear-view door mirror heaters operate automatically according to the external temperature and windscreen wiper operation.*

***Note:*** *An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head will be disengaged from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold then unfold the mirror using the switch.*

The mirrors can be configured by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and unfold when it is unlocked.

***Note:*** *If the mirrors were folded using the switches, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.*

## MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

If the vehicle is equipped with memory seats, when Reverse (**R**) is selected, the door mirrors can be set to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle of the kerb side for reversing.

The automatic mirror dip feature can be enabled or disabled using the **Vehicle Set-up** menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The exact dipped position can be adjusted while the mirrors are dipped:

1. With the ignition on, select Reverse (**R**).
2. With the mirror adjust controls, adjust to the desired dip position.
3. Select Neutral (**N**). This will store your setting for future use.

The next time Reverse (**R**) is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of Reverse (**R**), the mirrors will return to their previous position.

***Note:*** *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph) in Reverse (**R**), the mirrors will return to their normal driving position for enhanced visibility.*

## HEATED MIRRORS

The rear-view door mirror heaters operate automatically according to the external temperature and windscreen wiper operation.

## BLIND SPOT MONITOR

**The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.**

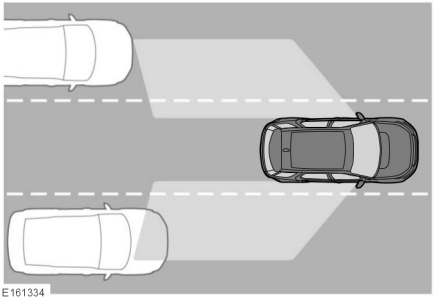
**Please note that BSM may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind or vehicles that are being overtaken rapidly.**

**BSM may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc.**

**The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle/object within the blind spot.**

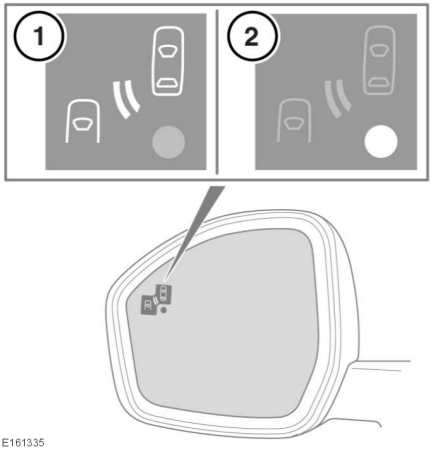
Make sure the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumpers, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



E161334

The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, that is not easily visible by the driver and is designed to identify any object overtaking the vehicle. The system uses a radar on each side of the vehicle to identify any overtaking vehicle/object within the blind spot area of the vehicle, while disregarding other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.




E161335

If an object is identified by the BSM system as being an overtaking vehicle/object, an amber warning icon (**1**) illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror, to alert the driver that there is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 6 metres (20 feet) behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 metres (8.2 feet) from the side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane).

***Note:*** *This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

***Note:*** *The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

The BSM automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check, during which the warning icons in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

The indicator dot (**2**) remains illuminated until the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

The BSM is automatically disabled and an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirrors when:

- Any transmission is engaged in reverse gear.
- Park (**P**) is selected for vehicles with automatic transmission.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

***Note:*** *Automatic disabling of the BSM does not apply to vehicles with Reverse traffic detection. See* ***125, REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION****.*

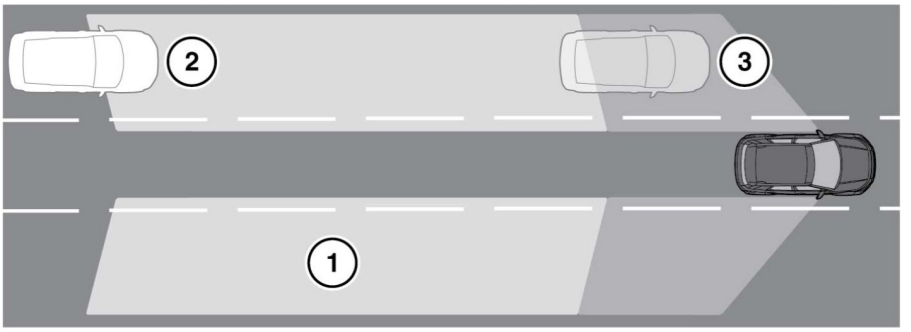
The BSM is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane highways.

The BSM can be enabled or disabled through the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *If an overtaking vehicle is detected on both sides of the vehicle simultaneously, the warning icons in both external mirrors will illuminate.*

***Note:*** *The BSM is disabled when a trailer is attached.*

## CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING




E138437

**The Closing vehicle detection system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.**

**The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect an approaching vehicle.**

**Please note that the Closing vehicle detection system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from directly behind the vehicle. Always use the exterior and rear-view mirrors.**

Make sure the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumpers, that may interfere with the radar sensors.

In addition to the functionality provided by the Blind Spot Monitor (BSM), the Closing vehicle detection system monitors a larger area behind the vehicle (**1**). If a vehicle is identified by the system as being a rapidly approaching vehicle (**2**), the amber warning icon will flash in the relevant mirror to indicate that there is a potential hazard and therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous. When the vehicle reaches the area monitored by the BSM (**3**), the amber warning icon will illuminate continuously.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 70 metres (230 feet) behind the rear wheels, and up to approximately 2.5 metres (8 feet) from the side of the vehicle.

***Note:*** *This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

***Note:*** *The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

***Note:*** *If a rapidly overtaking vehicle is detected on both sides of the vehicle simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will flash.*

***Note:*** *The Closing vehicle detection system is disabled when a trailer is attached.*

***Note:*** *When the BSM is disabled through the Instrument panel menu, the Closing vehicle detection system is also disabled. See* ***49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

## BSM SENSORS

The BSM system will automatically disable if either of the sensors become completely obscured, an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED** appears in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *Blockage testing is only initiated when the vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) and will take at least 2 minutes of accumulated driving above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.*

If the sensors become blocked, then please check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost and dirt.

If a fault with one of the radar sensors is detected, an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault in the system occurs, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## GARAGE DOOR TRANSCEIVER

**Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.**

**When programming the transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure the area is clear. This will prevent potential harm or damage, as the gate or garage door will activate during the program.**

This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.

The door transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to 3 different transmitters, which can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems or other radio frequency operated devices.

Although this section mainly describes the procedures for a garage door opener, it equally applies to the previously mentioned applications.

In some countries, this feature is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

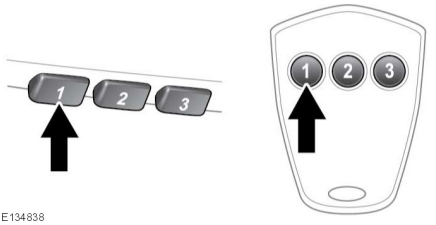
For further information, see **76, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

## BEFORE PROGRAMMING

When programming a device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter (cycle), unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible motor failure.

For the best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter of the garage door opener (or other device) before programming. If your garage door opener receiver (located in the garage) is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is hanging straight down.

## PROGRAMMING




E134838

With the engine switched off:

1. Make sure the ignition system is on.
2. Hold the end of the original garage door opener hand-held transmitter 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 ins) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror; keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously press and hold both the chosen transceiver button on the rear-view mirror, as shown above, and the hand-held transmitter button. Keep both buttons pressed. The indicator lamp will flash slowly at first and then change to a fast flash. When the indicator lamp flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing lamp indicates successful programming.
4. If, after 60 seconds, the indicator lamp does not flash rapidly, release both the transceiver and the hand-held transmitter buttons and repeat the procedure, starting with Step **2**. Position the hand-held transmitter at a different angle and/or distance.

5. Press and hold the programmed garage door opener button and observe the indicator lamp.
    - If the indicator lamp illumination is continuous, programming is complete and your device should operate when the garage door opener button is pressed and held for approximately 1 to 2 seconds, and then released.
    - If the indicator lamp blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and then illuminates continuously, proceed with the following programming instructions for rolling code device equipment.

## TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

For first time programming, make sure the engine is switched off:

1. Make sure the ignition is on (but with the engine switched off).
2. Press and hold the 2 outer buttons on the transceiver in the rear-view mirror. Keep the buttons pressed until the indicator lamp begins to flash (this will take approximately 10 seconds), then release the buttons.

All memories in the garage door opener have now been cleared.

***Note:*** *Do not perform this procedure when programming the additional garage door opener buttons.*

## ROLLING CODE DEVICE EQUIPMENT PROGRAMMING

***Note:*** *The assistance of a second person, may make the following steps quicker and easier. Once the button has been pressed, there are only 30 seconds in which to complete Step* ***3****.*

1. At the garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) in the garage, locate the learn or smart button/switch.
    - The name of the button or switch may vary between manufacturers.
2. Press and release the learn or smart button.
3. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the programmed garage door opener button for 2 seconds, and release.
4. Repeat the press, hold, release sequence 3 times to complete the programming process.

The garage door opener in the rear-view mirror should now activate the rolling code device.

## REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To programme a device to a previously programmed button:

1. Press and hold the desired pre-programmed garage door opener button for at least 20 seconds, but no longer than 30 seconds, until the indicator lamp begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the rear-view mirror button, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 ins) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror; keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Carry out Step **3** of **Programming**.

## ENTRY GATE PROGRAMMING

The technology of some entry gates requires you to press and re-press (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button every 2 seconds during programming.

Continue to press and hold the desired rear-view mirror button while you cycle your hand-held transmitter until the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.

## INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

It is recommended that when you sell or dispose of the vehicle, the programmed transceiver buttons be erased for security purposes.

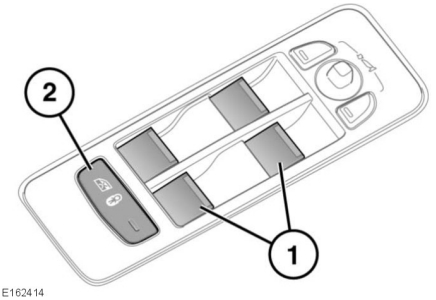
For information on the range of available compatible products or accessories, or for assistance, you should contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer or contact **HomeLink** via their website.

***Note:*** *Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.*

***Note:*** *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS

**To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.**

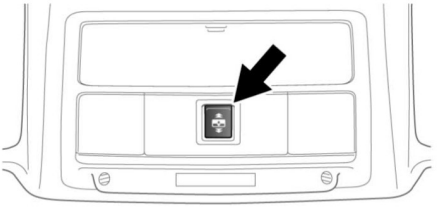


E162414

1. Window switches: Briefly pull a switch fully up and release; the window will continue to rise until fully closed. Briefly press a switch fully down and release; the window will continue to lower until fully open. Pressing or pulling a switch again will stop window movement.
   The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.
   Rear windows have a short drop feature for passenger comfort. The first press of a switch will lower the window a short distance, to give a flow of air. A second press will lower the window to its full extent. If a resonance or booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25 mm (1 in.) will eliminate the condition.
2. Rear window and door isolator switch: Press the switch, the rear windows and doors are isolated when the indicator light in the switch is illuminated.

**If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows and doors. If the windows or doors are operated by young children there is a risk of serious injury or death.**

## ROOF BLIND


E162416

Roof blind open/close switch: To open the blind, push from the rear of the switch and release. The blind will slide fully open.

To close the blind, push from the front of the switch to the first position and release. The blind will fully close. A further press will stop movement of the blind.

Alternatively, push from the front of the switch to the second position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position, then release.

## ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

**Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.**

**Before closing a window or the roof blind, make sure no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.**

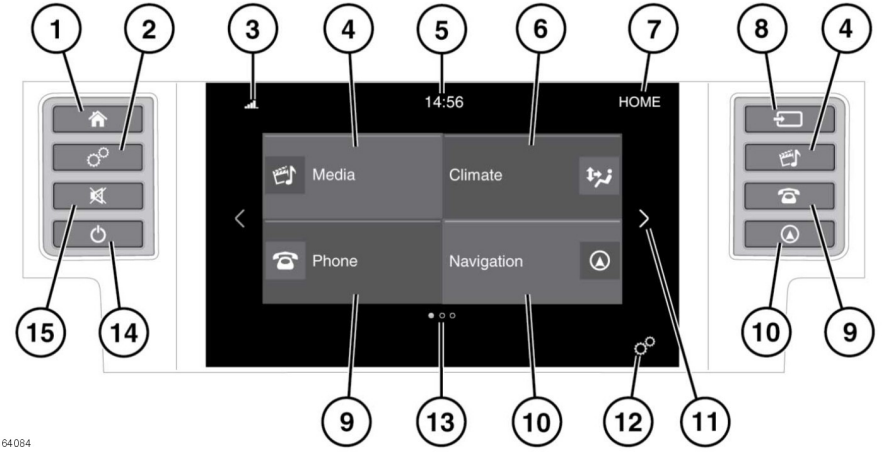
Anti-trap protection will stop window or roof blind movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or roof blind, and its aperture, and remove any obstructions (e.g., ice, etc.).

If it is still necessary to raise the window, the override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window; anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window slightly.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again; anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time hold the switch in the close position. Hold until closed.

***Note:*** *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset.*

## TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS




E164084

**Do not adjust the Touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.**

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the Touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery; preventing the engine from starting.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the Touch screen.

***Note:*** *The Touch screen display and the number of pages will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

1. Press to select the **HOME** menu screen.
2. Press to select the **General settings** menu screen, see **80, GENERAL SETTINGS**, or if Park assist is fitted, see **126, PARK ASSIST**.
3. Status icons: When a phone is connected, the battery level and network signal strength is displayed. Also, when selected, TA (Traffic announcements).
4. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **Media** system; or if the Media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source menu.

   ***Note:*** *When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.*
5. Clock: The clock can be adjusted via the **System** option, in the **General settings** menu.
6. Touch to select the **Climate** system. See **83, AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL**.
7. Screen title.
8. Touch to select the audio source.
9. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **Telephone** system. See **163, TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
10. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **Navigation** system. The current destination route, or the **NAV MENU** screen will be displayed. See **169, THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

11. Touch the arrow or swipe the screen, to select the next page, which contains the **Extra features** available on the vehicle. See **80, EXTRA FEATURES**.
12. Touch to select the **General settings** menu screen.
13. Number of pages indicator: A solid dot indicates the screen selected.
14. Press to turn the Touch screen on/off, or, if Surround cameras are fitted, the screen can be turned off in Extra features.
15. Press to mute the sound, or, if Parking aids are fitted, see **122, USING THE PARKING AID**.

## TOUCH SCREEN USE

Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the Touch screen.

Definitions for the various button taps and touch screen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with your fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- Swipe: Move your fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- Drag: Touch an object and move it with your fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.

## TOUCH SCREEN CARE

Do not use abrasive cleaners on the Touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## GENERAL SETTINGS

The **General settings** menu screen is divided into categories. Touch to display the list of settings for the required system:

- **System**
- **Display**
- **Media**
- **Bluetooth**
- **Phone**
- **Navigation**
- **Climate**

***Note:*** *The list will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

## SYSTEM SETTINGS

The **System** settings screen is divided into categories and is selected via the **General settings** menu:

- **Language**: Select the language required.
- **Time & Date**: Select to change the time and date.
- **Volume settings**.
- **Beep**: Turn **ON/OFF**.
- **Animations**: Turn **ON/OFF**.
- **Automatic text scrolling**: Turn **ON/OFF**.
- **Screensaver**: Turn **ON/OFF**.
- **Dynamic Home Menu**: Turn **ON/OFF**.
- **Delete all personal data**.

***Note:*** *The list will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

## EXTRA FEATURES

Touch the required Extra feature to display that Extra feature information or settings screen:

- **Timed climate**, see **86, TIMED CLIMATE**.

- **Cameras**, see **130, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
- **ECO Data**: The ECO Data system is designed to help the driver maximise fuel economy by providing on-screen vehicle data. Touch to select the ECO Data home screen. See **141, ECO PROGRAM**.
- **Valet mode**, see **81, SELECTING VALET MODE**.
- **Ambient lighting**: When selected, the ambient lighting in the vehicle can be changed.
- **Wade sensing**: When selected, this screen provides information for the driver while wading through water. See **146, WADE SENSING CONTROLS**.
- **4 x 4i**: When selected, this provides information for off-road driving.
- **WiFi hotspot**, see **166, INCONTROL WI-FI**.
- **Screen off**: Touch to turn the screen off.

***Note:*** *The number of Extra features will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

## SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace. Valet mode also prevents operation of the Touch screen, to prevent access to telephone numbers or navigation addresses.

Each time Valet mode is used, a Personal Identification Number (PIN) must be entered.

1. Touch **Valet mode** in **Extra features**.
2. Enter a memorable 4-digit PIN. You will be prompted to confirm the PIN. If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**. If the PIN is cancelled, or incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again.
3. **Valet mode activated** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

The loadspace is now securely locked in Valet mode and the **Valet mode On** screen is displayed.

## DESELECTING VALET MODE

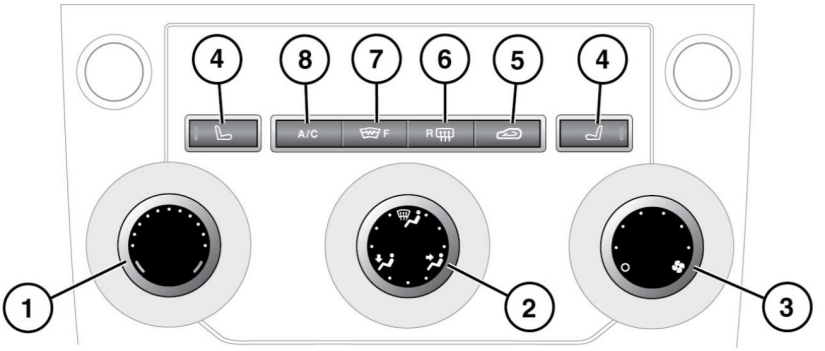
1. When you re-enter the vehicle, select **Valet mode** in **Extra features**.
2. Enter your memorable 4-digit PIN and touch the **OK** soft key.

**Valet mode deactivated** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

- The loadspace will return to the previously set security requirement.
- The Touch screen will be enabled.

***Note:*** *If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL




E162149

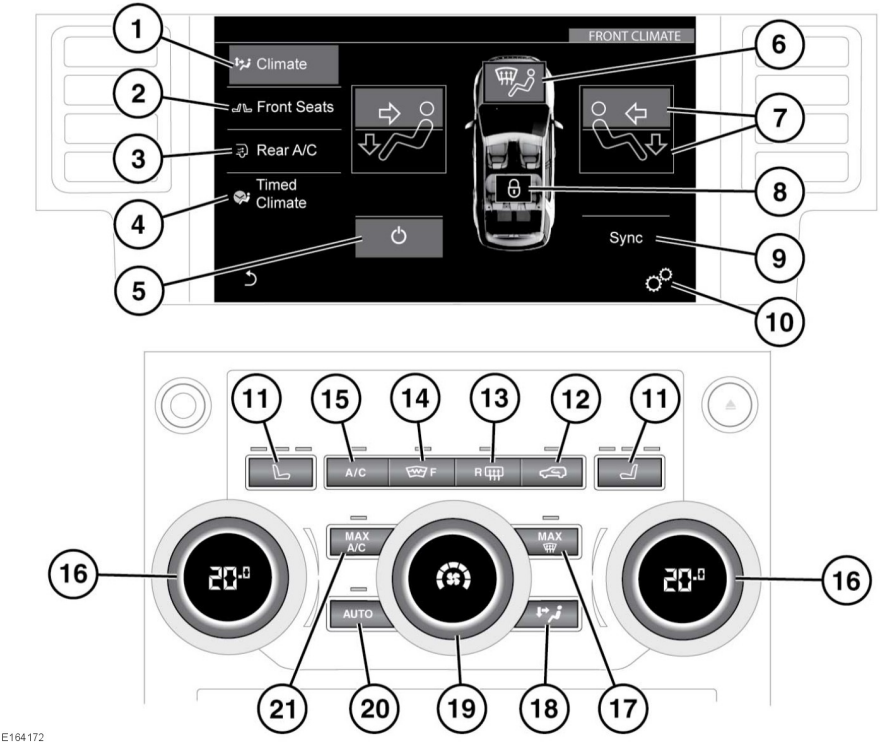
***Note:*** *When Eco Program is selected heating and ventilation settings are automatically adjusted to reduce energy consumption. See* ***141, ECO PROGRAM****.*

1. Temperature control, rotate to adjust.
2. Air distribution: Rotate to direct air flow to the required areas.
3. Blower speed: Rotate to adjust air flow speed through the vents.
4. Seat heaters: Press once to turn on high, twice to turn on medium, and a third time to turn on low. Press a forth time to turn off.
5. Recirculation:
   - Press briefly to turn on recirculation for 4 minutes.
   - Press and hold to turn on continuous recirculation.
   - When recirculation is in operation, press briefly to turn off.
6. Heated rear screen: Press to switch on/off.
7. Heated windscreen: Press to switch on/off.
8. Air conditioning: Press to switch on/off.

***Note:*** *The amber tell-tale indicators in the switches will illuminate when the function is selected.*

***Note:*** *In low temperatures, it is advisable to close the centre face-level vents, and direct air flow from the outer face-level vents towards the side windows. This will help to keep the windows clear of ice.*

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL




E164172

***Note:*** *The Climate control system removes moisture from the air and deposits the excess water beneath the vehicle. Puddles may form, but this is normal and is no cause for concern.*

***Note:*** *The LED indicator lamps, above the switches, will illuminate when the function is selected.*

***Note:*** *When the ECO program is selected, heating and ventilation settings are automatically adjusted to reduce energy consumption. See* ***141, ECO PROGRAM****.*

1. **Climate**: To access the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen, touch **Climate** on the **HOME** menu screen. See **79, TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.
2. **Front Seats**: Touch to select the **Climate seats** settings screen.
3. **Rear A/C**: Touch to select the settings screen for the third row seats Climate control. See **88, CLIMATE CONTROL FOR THIRD ROW SEATS**.
4. **Timed Climate**: Touch to select the **TIMED CLIMATE** settings menu. See **86, TIMED CLIMATE**.

5. Touch to switch the Climate control system off.
6. Windscreen air distribution: Touch to switch on/off.
7. Air distribution: Touch the upper (face distribution) or lower (body/feet distribution) area to select.
8. This indicates that the Rear A/C is locked. To access the Rear A/C **lock/unlock** feature, touch **Rear A/C**.
9. **Sync**: Touch to synchronise the driver and front passenger Climate zone settings.
10. Touch to select the **General settings** menu, then to access the **Climate** settings menu.
11. Heated front seats or Climate front seats:
    - If Heaters front seats are fitted: See **85, HEATED SEATS**.
    - If Climate front seats are fitted: Press the switch to select the **Climate seats** settings menu screen. See **85, CLIMATE SEATS**.
12. Recirculation: Press for Timed recirculation (recirculation will operate for 4 mins), or press and hold for continuous recirculation. Press again to turn off.

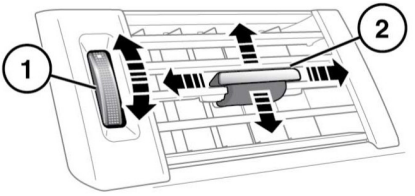
    ***Note:*** *Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*
13. Heated rear screen: Press to turn on/off.
14. Heated front screen: Press to turn on/off.
15. **A/C**: Press to turn the Air conditioning system on/off.
16. Temperature controls for either the driver or passenger: Rotate to change the temperature. The individual set temperature is displayed in the centre of the controls.
17. Press to turn maximum defrost for the windscreen on/off.
18. Press to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen.
19. Blower speed control: In manual mode, rotate to select the required fan speed for the selected zone/s. The speed selected is indicated by illuminated LEDs.
20. **AUTO**: Press to turn fully automatic mode on/off. Depending on the specification of the vehicle, the various options for AUTO mode can be set via the **CLIMATE** settings.
21. **MAX A/C**: Press to turn the maximum Air conditioning mode on/off.

***Note:*** *In low temperatures, it is advisable to close the centre face-level vents, and direct air flow from the outer face-level vents towards the side windows. This will help to keep the windows clear of ice.*

**Instructional video - Climate control.**

E166655

## AIR VENT OPERATION




E155740

The vents can be opened using the following procedure:

1. To open the vent, rotate the thumb wheel fully upwards, from the bottom (closed) position to the (top) open position.
2. After the vent has been opened using the thumb wheel, the direction control can be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

***Note:*** *The vent can only be fully closed again using the thumbwheel. The vent can be closed, regardless of the position of the directional control.*

Do not insert or attach items to the vents, for example, pens, air fresheners, etc..

Do not use excessive force while operating the vent control or the thumb wheel.

## HEATED SEATS

***Note:*** *Heated seats consume a great amount of battery power. They will only operate when the engine is running.*
*If the Heated seat/s are operating when the ECO program is selected, the Heated seat/s will switch off automatically. The Heated seat/s can be switched on again, but this may affect the vehicle's fuel economy.*

**Front Heated Seats**

Press the relevant Heated front seat button to switch the required Heater seat on at the maximum setting; the 3 LED indicators in the button illuminate.

Press a second time to set the Heated front seat at the medium setting; 2 LED indicators illuminate.

Press a third time to set the Heated front seat at the lowest setting; 1 LED indicator illuminates.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

**Rear Heated Seats**

If fitted, the Heated rear seats (non-climate) are operated using the switches located on the rear of the centre console.

Press the relevant Heated rear seat button to switch the required Heated seat on at the maximum setting; the 3 LED indicators in the button illuminate.

Press a second time to set the Heated rear seat at the medium setting; 2 LED indicators illuminate.

Press a third time to set the Heated rear seat at the lowest setting; 1 LED indicator illuminates.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

## CLIMATE SEATS

***Note:*** *The Climate seats will only operate when the engine is running.*
*If the Climate seat/s are operating when the ECO program is selected, the Climate seat/s will switch off automatically. The Climate seat/s can be switched on again, but this may affect the vehicle's fuel economy.*

Press the relevant Climate front seat button to enable. A pop-up menu will appear on the Touch screen.

**Heated ventilation**

- Touch the up arrow icon to switch heated ventilation on at the maximum setting (3 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow icon once or twice to reduce the ventilation setting (2 and 1 red bars).
- Touch the down arrow icon a third time to switch seat ventilation off.

**Cooled ventilation**

- Touch the down arrow icon to switch cooled ventilation on at the maximum setting (3 blue bars).
- Touch the up arrow icon once or twice to reduce the ventilation setting (2 and 1 blue bars).
- Touch the up arrow icon a third time to switch seat ventilation off.

**Seat zone selection**

Constant selection of the **Seat zone** soft key will scroll through 3 choices of seat zone; **full seat**, **cushion**, or **seatback only**.

## TIMED CLIMATE

The Timed climate system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of using the vehicle, or maintains a temperature when leaving the vehicle for a short period of time.

The Timed climate system has control options for either timed or manual setting via the Touch screen, or it can be operated remotely by using the Timed climate remote.

Dependent on the external ambient temperature, the Timed climate system will automatically choose to draw in fresh air to cool the cabin, or to operate the auxiliary heater to warm it.

Also, in low ambient temperatures, the auxiliary heater helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant for improved heater and starting performance.

***Note:*** *When the heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. This is normal and is not a cause for concern.*

**Do not operate the Timed climate system when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire/explosion.**

**Do not operate the Timed climate system while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.**

Timed climate may not operate, or will switch off automatically, in the following scenarios:

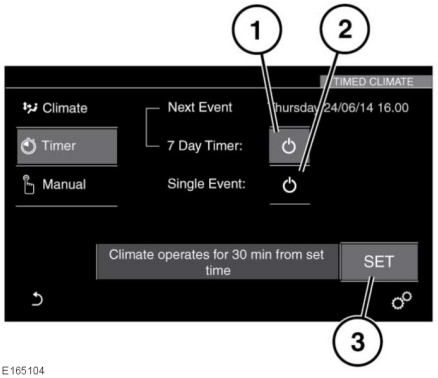
- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at, or above, its required temperature.

## TIMED CLIMATE TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS

The Touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED in the Climate control **AUTO** button flashes.

***Note:*** *The system will cease operation if the engine is started.*




E165104

To set a Timed climate program:

- Select **Timed Climate** from the **Climate** screen or from the **Extra features** page.
- Select either **7 Day Timer** (**1**) or **Single Event** (**2**). When selected, touch **SET** (**3**).

**7 Day timer**: Select the day, then select the start times (hours and minutes) for each of the 2 settings, using the arrows. These times can also be set for **All week**.

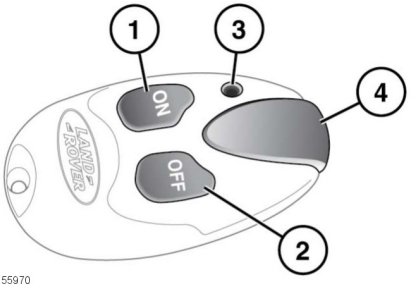
**Single Event**: Set the start time and touch **SET**.

***Note:*** *The time format, 12/24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the* ***System*** *settings menu. See* ***80, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

A current heating cycle will be cancelled if the engine is started. Any programmed heating cycle may be cancelled by touching the relevant soft key (**1** or **2**) on the timer setup menu.

## TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE CONTROLS

The Timed climate remote control has an approximate range of 100 metres (110 yards). There is no need to point the antenna at the vehicle.




E155970

1. **ON** button.
2. **OFF** button.
3. LED (operation indicator).
4. Antenna.

   ***Note:*** *Avoid touching the antenna when operating the ON or OFF buttons.*

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately 2 seconds. The LED will illuminate to confirm that an automatic heating programme has been initiated. The LED flashes once every 2 seconds to indicate that the heater is active.

The heating program will continue for 20-30 minutes, when it will switch off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. It also turns off automatically if the engine is started.

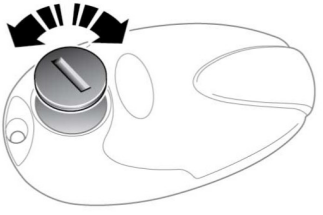
The LED indicator signals various states and conditions for the heater as follows:

- Illuminates red for 2 seconds when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the program has stopped.
- Flashes green or red for 2 seconds then stops when the **ON** or **OFF** buttons are pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Illuminates orange for 2 seconds before showing green or red, to indicate that the remote battery is low.
- Flashes orange for 5 seconds to indicate that no action has been taken and the remote battery should be replaced.

**Additional remotes**

Extra remote controls can be programmed to operate the heater. A maximum of 3 remote controls can be programmed to each vehicle. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to purchase extra remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

## REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



E155971

With the back of the remote control facing upwards, use a coin or a similar implement to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, making sure the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement 3.3 volt, CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock.

***Note:*** *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture/oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

## CLIMATE CONTROL FOR THIRD ROW SEATS

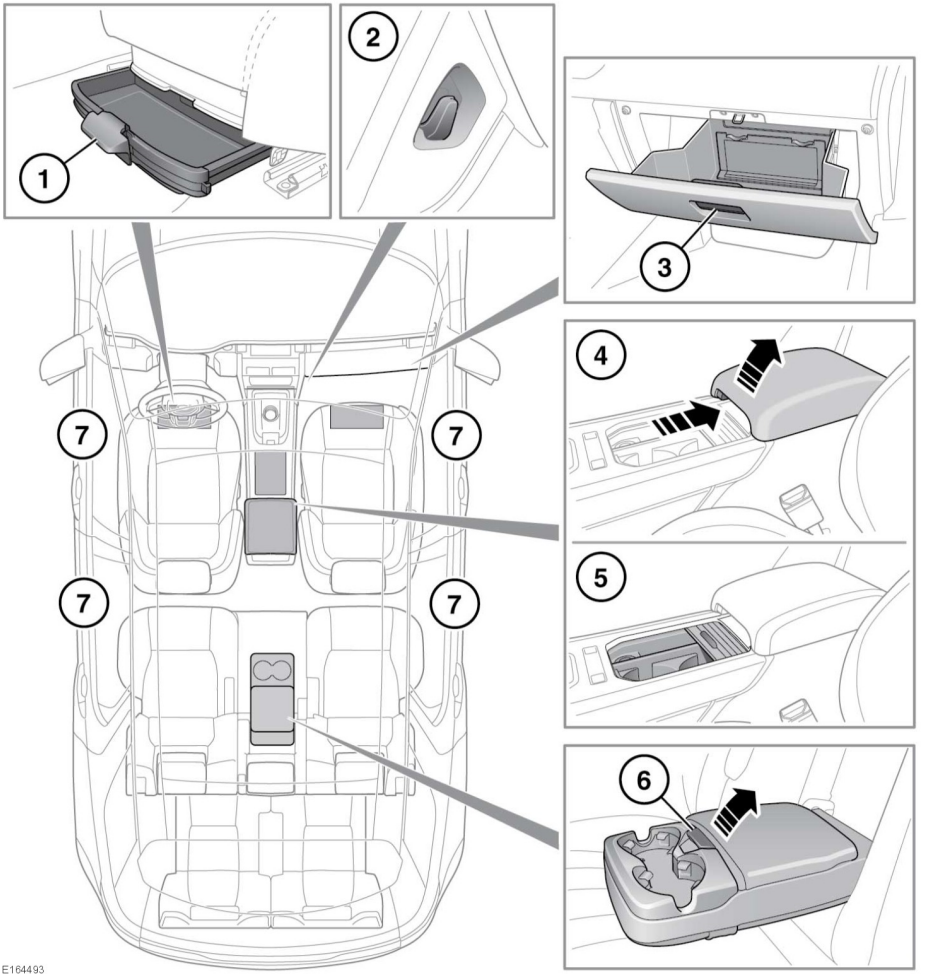
The third row seat climate control provides fan controlled chilled air through the rear side vents.

E164877

Rotate the control to adjust the fan speed.

Third row seat climate can also be controlled and switch on/off via the front climate control touch screen. Touch the **Rear A/C** soft key to view the options.

## STORAGE COMPARTMENTS




1. Under seat storage tray: To access the tray, lift the handle to release and then pull forwards. Note, there is a tray under each front seat.

   Do not exceed the maximum storage weight of 1.5 kg (3 lbs).

2. Bag hook.
3. Glovebox: Pull the handle to open.
4. Armrest and cubby box: Pull the release lever and then raise the armrest to access the storage area.

⚠ **To avoid personal injury, keep hands and fingers clear from the front and rear edges of the armrest during the opening and closing of the cubby box.**

5. Cup holders: Slide back the cover to reveal the cup holders.

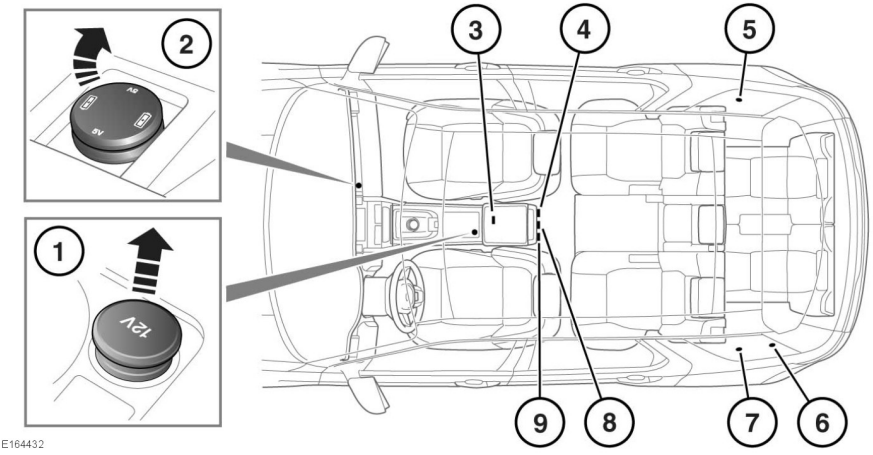
⚠ **Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.**

6. Rear armrest storage and cup holders: Press the release button to access the storage compartment.

7. Storage areas.

⚠ **Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to a sudden braking or direction change, loose items can cause serious injury.**

## AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS




E164432

There are 12V power sockets and 5V USB charge sockets fitted to this vehicle.

Remove the cover to access a 12V power socket.

***Note:*** *The 12V power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.*

Lift the cover to access a 5V USB charge socket.

12V and 5V socket locations:

1. 12V power socket, located on the centre console. Depending on the vehicle specification, a 5V USB charge socket may be fitted.
2. 5V USB charge socket, located on the passenger side fascia.
3. 12V power socket, located inside the front centre console cubby box.
4. 5V USB charge socket, located on the rear of the centre console.
5. 5V USB charge socket, located in the loadspace on vehicles with third row seats.

   ***Note:*** *Not fitted if the vehicle has the third row seat air conditioning control.*
6. 12V power socket, located in the loadspace.
7. 5V USB charge socket, located in the loadspace on vehicles with third row seats.
8. 12V power socket, located on the rear of the centre console.
9. 5V USB charge socket or 12V power socket, located on the rear of the centre console.

***Note:*** *Socket locations are dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

Only use Land Rover approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause the battery to discharge. If you are in any doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

## LOAD CARRYING

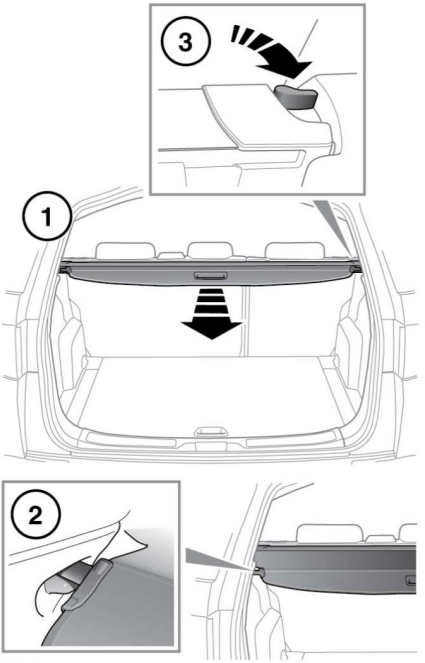
**Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.**

**Always make sure objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.**

## LOADSPACE COVER

**Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, the loadspace cover could cause serious injury or death.**

**Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuver, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.**



E163428

1. Using the handle, pull the cover to unroll.
2. Engage the end pieces into the recessed areas, moulded into the loadspace sides. To retract the loadspace cover, disengage the ends from the recessed areas and allow the cover to retract into its housing.
3. To remove the cover, turn the release lever to unlock the assembly and disengage the pins from the sockets.

   ***Note:*** *Turn the release lever until resistance is felt and then pull further to release.*

**To avoid injury, the loadspace cover must NOT be left in the installed position when the third row seats are occupied.**

Do not attempt to raise the second row seats into the upright position, or tip them forward for third row access, while the loadspace cover is stowed behind the second row seats, as damage will result.

4. To refit the cover assembly, engage the left side into the recessed area, then engage the right side, push down into place until a audible click is heard.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

**A loaded roof rack can reduce the stability of the vehicle, particularly when cornering and during crosswinds.**

**Driving off-road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended.**

Fit only a roof rack system that is designed for use with your vehicle. For further information, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

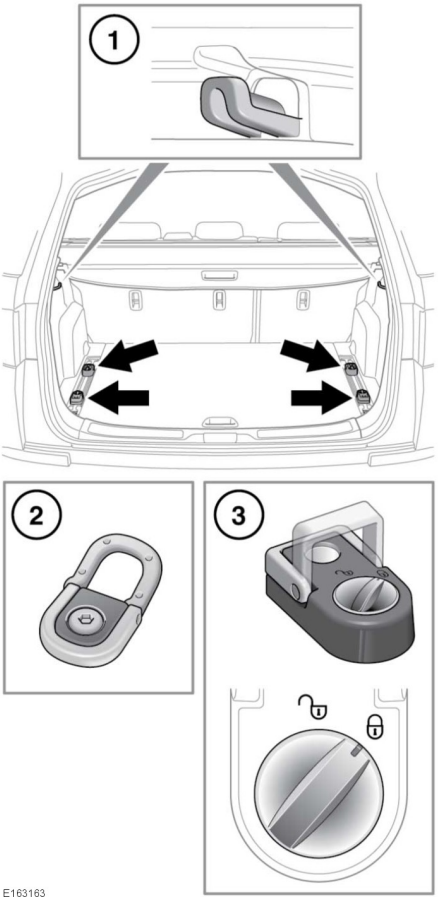
The maximum load for a Land Rover approved roof rack system is 75 kg (165 lb) while driving on-road. Off-road driving reduces the limit to 50 kg (110 lb). The weight of the approved roof rack system is not calculated as part of the load.

If an alternative roof rack system is used, the weight of that system must be included as part of the load weight.

Loads must be evenly distributed without overhanging the rack. After travelling 50 km (30 miles), check the security of the roof rack and any load.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

**All items carried in the luggage area should be properly secured.**




1. Bag hooks: The bag hooks should only be used for light weight items.
2. Fixed lashing eyes: Use to assist in safely securing large items.

3. Adjustable lashing eyes: First turn the locking button counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the button and slide to the required position in the adjusting rail. Release the button to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly until you hear a click. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the button clockwise to lock.

***Note:*** *A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

## TOWING WEIGHTS

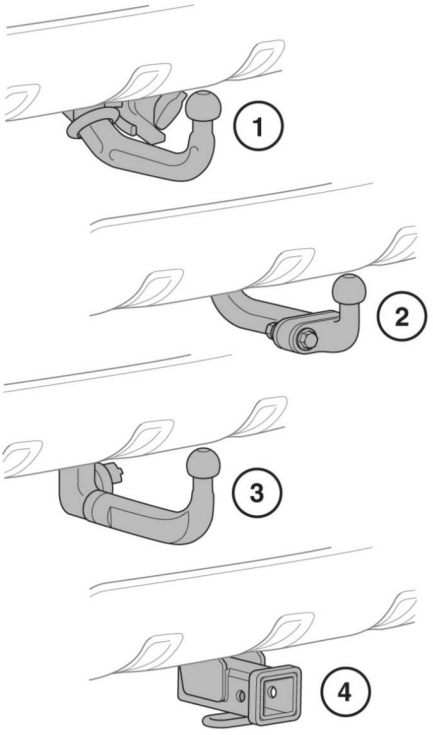
See **250, WEIGHTS**, for details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross Train Weight (GTW), axle weights and maximum payload.

- If the vehicle is fully laden, see **250, WEIGHTS** for nose load limitations.
- If it is necessary to increase the nose weight up to a maximum of 175 kg (385 lb), the vehicle's load should be reduced accordingly. This is to make sure that the GVW and maximum rear axle load are not exceeded.

**Europe only**: When towing, the maximum permissible GVW can be increased by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lb), provided that the road speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph) or less.

***Note:*** *When calculating rear axle loading, remember that the trailer's nose weight, the load in the vehicle's luggage area, weight on the rails/roof rack, and the weight of rear seat passengers must all be added together.*

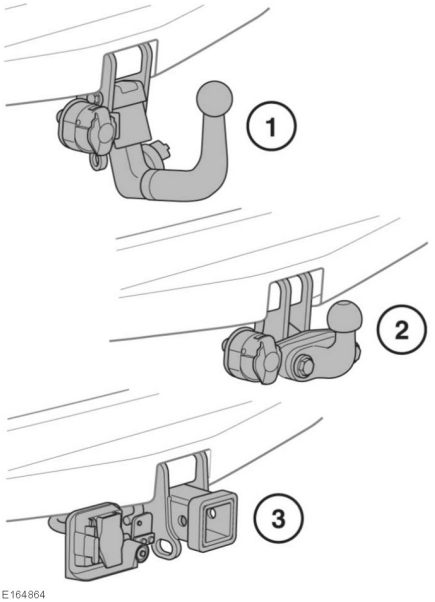
## TOW BALL OPTIONS




E164863

Tow ball options for 5 seat vehicles and 7 seat vehicles without a spare wheel:

1. Electrically deployable powered tow bar. See **99, POWERED TOW BAR**.
2. Flange mounted, bolt on tow ball.
3. Quick release, detachable tow bar. See **98, FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BAR**.
4. Receiver for hitch (drawbar). See **100, TRAILER HITCH (Australia only)**.



E164864

Tow ball options for 7 seat vehicles with a spare wheel:

1. Quick release, detachable tow bar. See **98, FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BAR**.
2. Flange mounted, bolt on tow ball.
3. Receiver for hitch (drawbar). See **100, TRAILER HITCH (Australia only)**.

## TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

When a trailer is attached, TSA will automatically detect when trailer sway is developing. It will then gradually reduce the vehicle's speed by cutting engine power and applying the brakes to help regain control.

TSA will not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.

The ability of TSA may be reduced when travelling on slippery surfaces.

***Note:*** *TSA will not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.*

## HITCH GUIDANCE

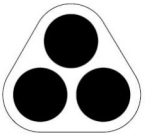
Hitch guidance is a user selectable Touch screen feature that can aid the process of guiding the vehicle to a trailer tow hitch. Use Hitch guidance while reversing the vehicle to a trailer hitch.

Proceed as follows:

1. Select Reverse gear (R). Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the Touch screen will automatically display selectable icons or a menu list. See **130, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM** or see **123, REAR CAMERA**.
2. Touch the Rear camera system's **Hitch assist** icon, or for Surround camera's, tick **Hitch guidance** on the Touch screen to enable the guidance lines to be displayed.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 600 mm (2 ft) of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature is operated to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre carefully until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

## TOW ASSIST

***Note:*** *Trailer guidance requires a connected trailer to be fitted with a tracking target sticker, which **must** be attached according to specific instructions. Ask your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for details.*


E134952

***Note:*** *This feature may not operate with all trailer designs.*

Trailer guidance aids trailer reversing, by displaying guide lines on the Touch screen.

Trailer guidance becomes active when a trailer/caravan is attached to the vehicle and the trailer's electrical plug is attached to the vehicle's socket.

***Note:*** *The driver's door must be opened and closed after the trailer/caravan is connected to the electrical socket, before the system will detect the connection.*

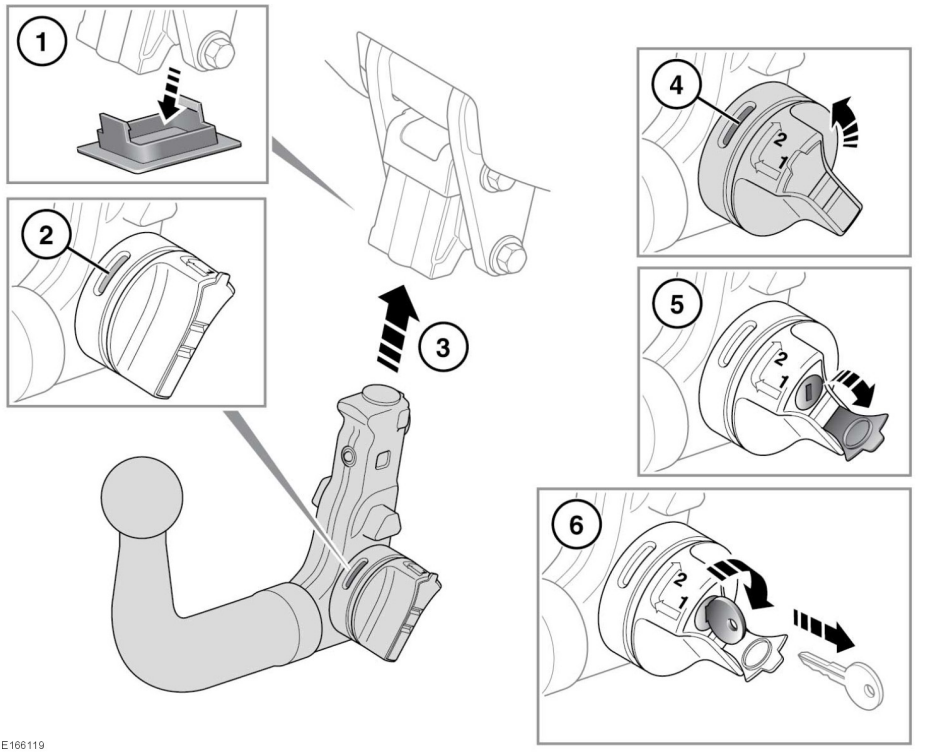
The screen will display a choice for connection. Select **YES** to move to the setup screen. Select **NO** to return to the previous screen.

***Note:*** *If the connection is not detected, setup can be manually prompted by touching the Tow Assist soft key on the* ***Camera*** *menu.*

On first use, the setup screens take the user through a series of configuration options for the connected trailer. Information, such as trailer hitch length, number of axles and camera preference, is required to finalise setup. Once completed, the details are stored for future use.

When a new or existing trailer configuration is selected, Trailer guidance automatically displays on the Touch screen when Reverse gear (R) is selected. Coloured lines are displayed to indicate the predicted path of both the trailer and vehicle.

## FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BAR




E166119

Fit the Detachable tow bar as follows:

1. Remove the protective cover from the vehicle mounting and stow it in the tow bar stowage area.
2. The tow bar can only be installed when the locking lever is in the unlocked position (red showing).
3. Insert the tow bar into the mounting and push firmly upwards until the tow bar locks into position.
4. Turn the locking lever towards you until green is showing.
5. Remove the protective cover from the key slot.
6. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the tow bar, then remove the key and refit the protective cover. Store the key in a safe place.

**Do not exceed the maximum nose weight for the detachable tow ball. See 250, WEIGHTS.**

When the detachable tow bar is not required for immediate use, it should be removed and stowed in the appropriate place.

## REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BAR

Remove the Detachable tow bar as follows:

1. Insert the key and turn it counter-clockwise to unlock.
2. Remove the key, then supporting the tow bar, press and turn the locking lever away from you, to release.
3. Remove the tow bar and stow it in the dedicated stowage area under the loadspace floor. Where this is not provided, the tow bar should be stowed in the bag provided.

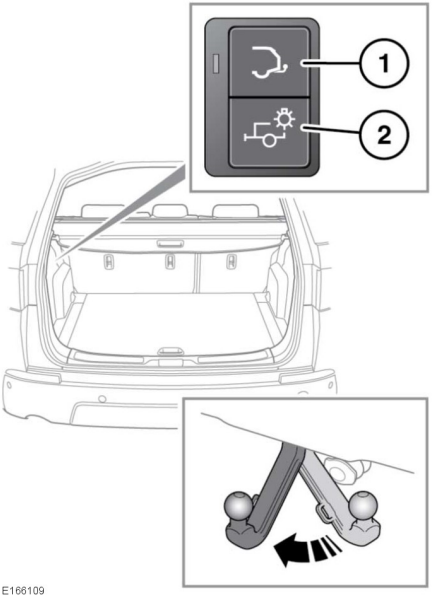
**Never leave the detachable tow bar loose in the vehicle. It could become a projectile in the event of heavy braking or an accident.**

## POWERED TOW BAR

Before activating the Powered tow bar, make sure that:

- Any trailer is unhitched.
- Any trailer electrical connections are disconnected.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The tailgate is open.
- The vehicle's transmission is in Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**).

If not carried out, any of the above conditions will stop the tow bar from operating. Also a short warning tone will sound if the tow bar button is pressed.



E166109

1. Powered tow bar button: Press to deploy or stow the powered tow bar.
   - The LED by the side of the button will flash slowly while the powered tow bar is being deployed or stowed, an audible tone will also sound.
   - Once deployed, the LED will stop flashing and will be solidly lit.
   - Once stowed, the LED will stop flashing and will be solidly lit for 2 seconds and will then extinguish.
   - To stop movement of the powered tow bar at any time, press the powered tow bar button. Press the button again to fully deploy or stow the tow bar.

- If during deployment of the powered tow bar an obstruction occurs, the tow bar movement will stop. The LED will flash faster, accompanied by a 2 second warning tone. When the obstruction has been cleared, press the tow bar button to reset the tow bar.
- Do not tow when the powered tow bar is not fully deployed. If this does occur, a warning tone will sound for 10 seconds.
- In the event of an unexpected operation, press the tow bar button to reset the tow bar. During the reset operation, the powered tow bar will fully stow and then fully deploy.

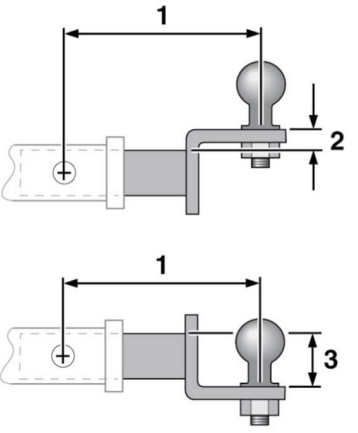
⚠ **Make sure the powered tow bar is fully deployed before connecting a trailer/caravan.**

2. Trailer light test button: Press to start a 3 minute sequence for vehicle and trailer light testing.
   - For the test to operate, the vehicle's lights should be turned off, the ignition should be off and the transmission should be in Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**).
   - The vehicle's lights and the trailer's lights will operate at the same time so that a visual check can be made of all of the lights.
   - The 3 minute sequence can be stopped at any time, by pressing the button again, by turning on the vehicle's lights or the ignition, or by selecting a gear.

## TRAILER HITCH (Australia only)

⚠ **Never leave the tow bar loose in the vehicle. It could become a projectile in the event of heavy braking or an accident.**

When selecting a drawbar for the receiver, the following dimensions must be adhered to.




E158673

Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest information.

**5 seat vehicles and 7 seat vehicles without a spare wheel**

1. The maximum recommended drawbar length is 204 mm (8 ins).
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a drawbar with a rise of 75 mm (3 ins) is recommended.
3. To achieve the maximum ball height, a drawbar with a drop of 12.5 mm (0.5 ins) is recommended.

**7 seat vehicles with a spare wheel**

1. The maximum recommended drawbar length is 154 mm (6 ins).
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a drawbar with a rise of 50 mm (2 ins) is recommended.
3. To achieve the maximum ball height, a drawbar with a drop of 37.5 mm (1.5 ins) is recommended.

***Note:*** *These dimensions have been calculated with a ball centre to drawbar plate height of 50 mm (2 ins). If a different ball size is used, then the dimensions need to be adjusted accordingly. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for the latest information.*

## TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

Attach only approved electrical connectors, which are in good condition, to the trailer's socket.

When a trailer's electrical connection is made and the vehicle's direction indicators are used, the trailer's warning indicator will flash in time with the direction indicators. See **56, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.

If when a direction indicator is used the symbol does not flash, the trailer's connection should be checked and appropriate action taken to make sure the trailer's direction indicators are functioning.

| Function | Minimum load | Maximum load |
|---|---|---|
| Brake lamps | 1.75 amps (21 Watt) | 5 amps (60 Watt) |
| Direction indicators* | 1.75 amps (21 Watt) | 5 amps (60 Watt)* |
| Side markers/Tail lamps** | - | 10 amps (120 Watt)** |
| Reverse lamps | - | 5 amps (60 Watt) |
| Fog lamp | - | 5 amps (60 Watt) |
| Permanent battery feed | - | 15 amps (180 Watt) |
| Ignition feed | - | 15 amps (180 Watt) |

* For each side.

** Total for both sides.

**Electric trailer brake**

If your vehicle has provision for an electric trailer brake module, the following connections are provided near the driving position:

- Permanent feed (maximum 30 amp).
- Brake signal (12 volt nominal when the vehicle is braking) (maximum 2 amp).
- Illumination supplied (maximum 2 amp).
- Electric brake connection to towing socket (maximum 30 amp).

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

**Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and loss of control.**

**Do not loop the breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball as it may slide off.**

- To maintain vehicle stability, the trailer nose load should be set at approximately 7% of the caravan/trailer gross weight (and a minimum of 4%).
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, the trailer should be loaded to achieve even weight distribution between axles.

- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Increase the rear tyre pressures on the towing vehicle to those for maximum vehicle loading conditions.
- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable, safety chain or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Always connect the breakaway cable or safety chain to the provided connection point. Do not loop it over the tow ball.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all trailer lights.

## TOWING A TRAILER

**Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle, or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle. It can also adversely affect vehicle stability and braking, which in turn can lead to a loss of control and an increased braking distance, resulting in a rollover or crash.**

**To preserve handling and stability, only fit Land Rover approved towing accessories.**

**Never use towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer. They have not been designed for this purpose and doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in injury or death.**

***Note:*** *A reduction in the performance of the air conditioning system is a normal function under high load towing conditions.*

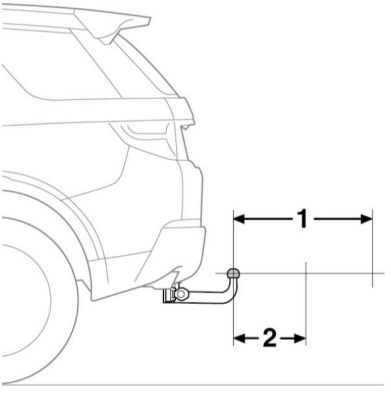
***Note:*** *Engine power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 1000 metres above sea level and for every additional 1000 metres, deduct 10% from the Gross Train Weight (GTW). See* ***250, WEIGHTS****.*

The Touch screen can display a rear view to assist with the reversing of the vehicle with a trailer attached. See **130, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM** and also **96, TOW ASSIST**.

## TOW BAR MOUNTED ACCESSORIES

Before fitting a tow bar mounted accessory, make sure it has been approved for use on Land Rover vehicles.
The use of unsuitable equipment can result in severe damage to the towing bracket.

Before fitting an accessory to the tow bar, observe the following guidelines:




E166369

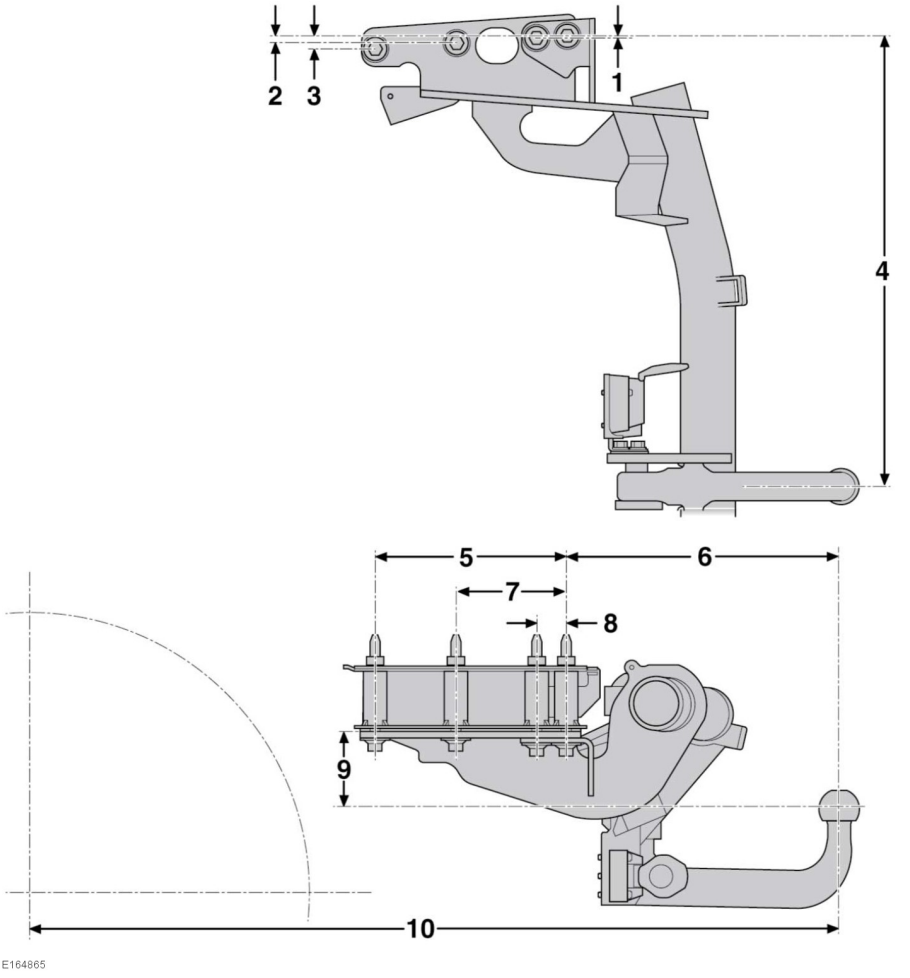
1. The attached accessory must not protrude more than 700 mm (27.5 ins) from the tow ball.
2. The centre of gravity of the mounted equipment and load combined should not exceed a distance of 390 mm (15.5 ins) from the ball. The maximum weight at this distance must not exceed 82.4 kg (182 lb).

***Note:*** *The forces exerted by trailer nose load and tow ball mounted accessories are different in nature and, therefore, a separate limit applies to both.*

***Note:*** *Only use a Land Rover approved bicycle rack catering for a maximum of 4 bicycles.*

## TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS

**5 seat vehicles and 7 seat vehicles without a spare wheel**

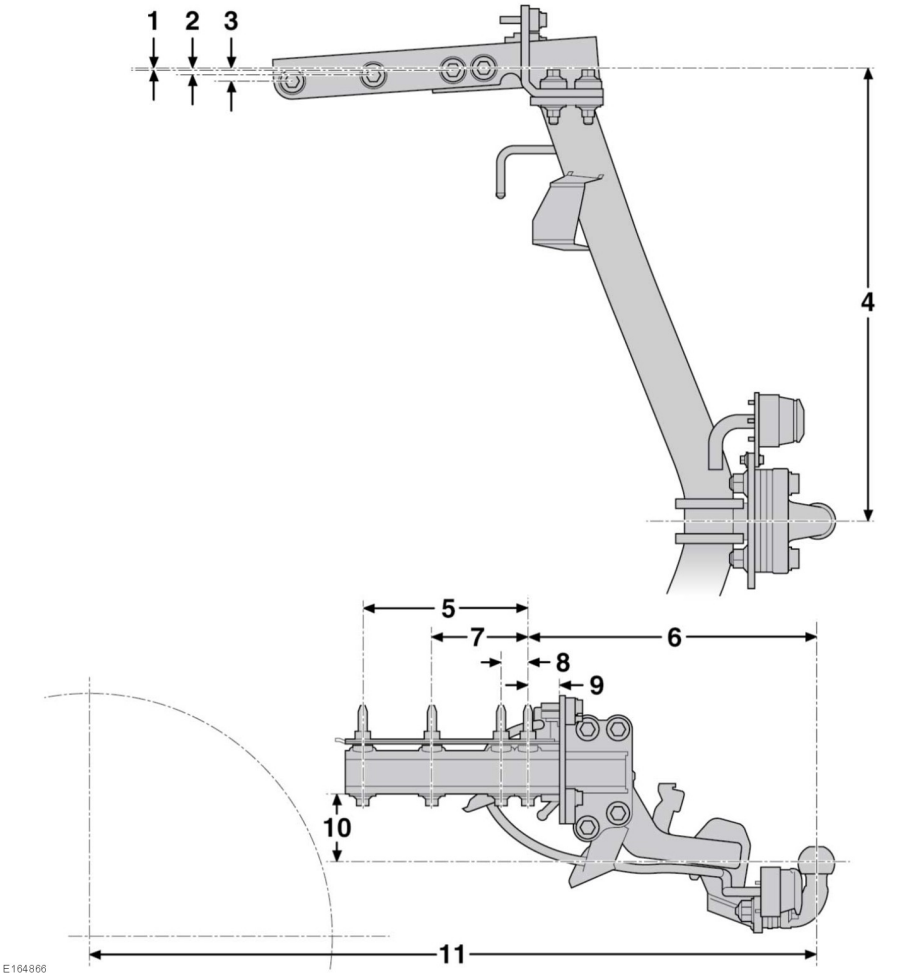



| Ref. | Dimension | Millimetres | Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Fixing points | 3 | 0.1 |
| 2 | Fixing points | 10 | 0.4 |
| 3 | Fixing points | 17 | 0.7 |

| Ref. | Dimension | Millimetres | Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | Fixing point to the centre of the tow ball | 573 | 22.6 |
| 5 | Fixing points | 245 | 9.6 |
| 6 | Centre of tow ball to fixing point | 348 | 13.7 |
| 7 | Fixing points | 142 | 5.6 |
| 8 | Fixing points | 40 | 1.6 |
| 9 | Centre of tow ball to tow bar attachment | 101 | 4 |
| 10 | Wheel centre to the centre of the tow ball | 1029 | 40.5 |

***Note:*** *Dimensions refer to towing equipment officially released by Land Rover.*

**7 seat vehicles with a spare wheel**




| Ref. | Dimension | Millimetres | Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Fixing points | 3 | 0.1 |
| 2 | Fixing points | 10 | 0.4 |
| 3 | Fixing points | 17 | 0.7 |

| Ref. | Dimension | Millimetres | Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | Fixing point to the centre of the tow ball | 573 | 22.5 |
| 5 | Fixing points | 244 | 9.6 |
| 6 | Centre of tow ball to fixing point | 423 | 16.6 |
| 7 | Fixing points | 142 | 5.6 |
| 8 | Fixing points | 40 | 1.6 |
| 9 | Fixing points | 47 | 1.8 |
| 10 | Centre of tow ball to tow bar attachment | 101 | 4 |
| 11 | Wheel centre to the centre of the tow ball | 1104 | 43.5 |

***Note:*** *Dimensions refer to towing equipment officially released by Land Rover.*

## STARTING THE ENGINE

**Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.**

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

***Note:*** *The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.*

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
3. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.
   Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **290, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

   ***Note:*** *For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins will be longer in low ambient temperatures due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay, the brake pedal must remain pressed.*

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released, if it is safe to do so.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

While the vehicle is stationary:

1. Make sure Park (**P**) is selected for vehicles with an automatic transmission or neutral for a manual transmission vehicle. Apply the parking brake.
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

While the vehicle is moving:

It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds. With either method, **Engine Stop Button Pressed** is displayed in the Message centre.

## SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the ignition without starting the engine:

1. With a valid Smart key inside the vehicle:
   - On automatic transmission vehicles, make sure the brake pedal is NOT pressed.
   - On manual transmission vehicles, make sure the clutch pedal is NOT pressed.
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps illuminate in the Instrument panel. See **290, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

If the brake pedal (auto transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

## ROLLING RE-START

***Note:*** *The engine* ***START/STOP*** *button will be inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.*

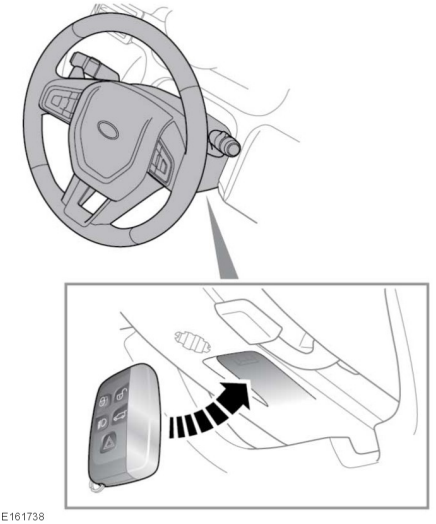
A rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (**N**) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

## KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade or the Smart key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the Keyless start backup procedure to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The Keyless start backup procedure can only be used when one of the following messages is displayed in the Message centre:

- **Smart Key Not Recognised**, or **Reposition** or **Place As Shown and Press Start Button**.



E161738

1. Position the Smart key flat against the underside of the steering column with the buttons facing downwards.

   ***Note:*** *The steering column has a recessed area to aid placement of the Smart key.*
2. Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal firmly.
   Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal firmly.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine has started, the pedal can be released, if it is safe to do so.

If the Smart key is not recognised, or the engine still fails to start, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Intelligent stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the ignition is turned on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine will turn off if the vehicle is stopped, for example, at traffic lights. When the brake pedal is released and a drive gear is selected, the engine will restart automatically.

During operation of the Intelligent stop/start system, a warning lamp will illuminate. See **56, INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)**.

To activate an automatic engine stop:

- Stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and apply sufficient brake pressure to make sure the vehicle is stationary. For manual transmissions, neutral must also be selected and the clutch pedal fully released.

To activate an automatic engine restart:

- Release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected. For manual transmissions, the engine will restart when the clutch pedal is fully pressed, prior to engaging a gear.

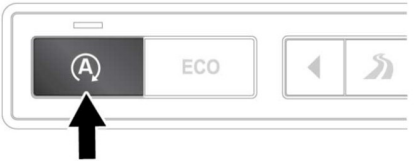
The engine will also restart if one of the following occurs:

- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- An automatic transmission shift paddle is used to select a gear.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- Climate control system demand increases.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 1 km/h (0.5 mph).
- Battery charge becomes low.
- Brake vacuum has been reduced (for example, using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off).

The following conditions will prevent an automatic engine stop:

- An automatic transmission shift paddle has been used to select a gear.
- The external temperature is less than approximately 0°C (32°F).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C (104°F).
- The engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The climate control system demand requires the engine to be running (for example, in Defrost mode).
- The battery charge is low.
- The bonnet is opened.
- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.

## DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START




E161770

To switch the system off, press the Intelligent stop/start switch.

***Note:*** *The engine will restart automatically if the switch is pressed while an automatic engine stop is in progress.*

To confirm that the system is off, the message **Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *The intelligent stop/start system will automatically reactivate the next time the ignition is turned on.*

If the Intelligent stop/start switch is pressed while there is a fault, the message **Stop/Start Not Available** is displayed.

## DRIVER EXIT

***Note:*** *The Driver exit feature is only available when Intelligent stop/start is enabled.*

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle will detect when a driver is not present, and automatically turn off the ignition.

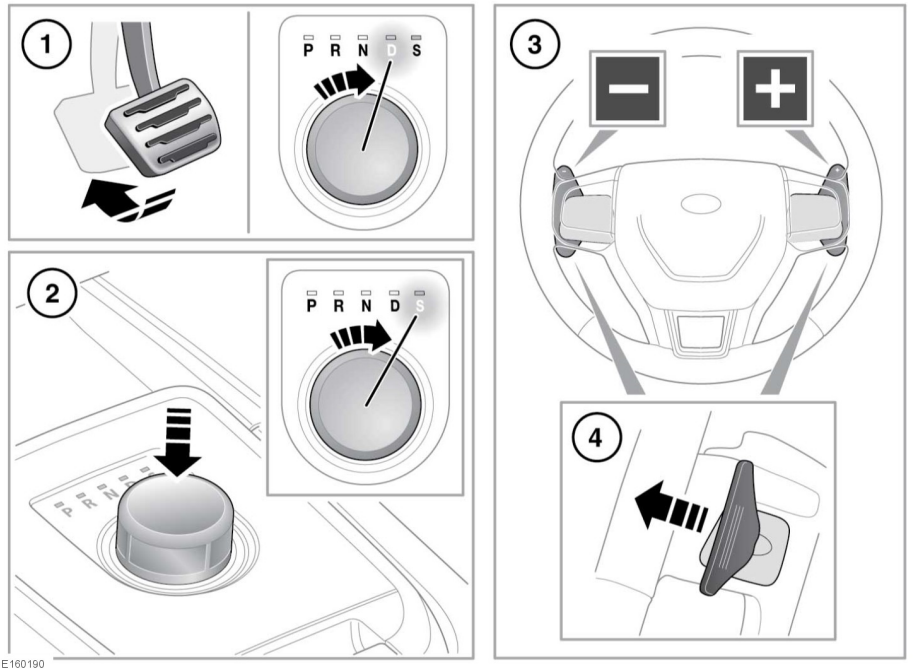
If Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) is selected, the Driver exit feature will turn the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The brake pedal is released.

If Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**) is selected, the Driver exit feature will turn the vehicle's ignition off if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

Once the vehicle's ignition has been turned off, the vehicle can be locked. For more information, see **14, SINGLE LOCKING**.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION




E160190

The rotary gear selector rotates in either direction. At engine start-up, the gear selector elevates out of its parked position.

The CommandShift™ and gear selector status will be displayed in the Message centre.

1. To select Drive ( **D**), Reverse (**R**), Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**), apply the brake pedal, then rotate the gear selector to the required position. The related LED indicator by the gear selector will illuminate.
   While in **D**, the gear changing is fully automatic. The shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed.

To achieve rapid acceleration (kick-down) while in **D**, quickly press the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing will resume.

***Note:*** *Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N** or **P**, make sure the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.*

***Note:*** *If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the brake pedal is applied, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove the pressure from the gear selector, make sure the brake pedal is applied and select the required gear, as described.*

2. To select Sport (**S**) mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The related LED by the gear selector will illuminate.
   The transmission will stay in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance.
   To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.
3. CommandShift™ gear selector paddles: Allows manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** positions. CommandShift ™ can be configured to work in **S** only, or in **S** and **D** from the **Driving Features** menu, which is accessed via the **Vehicle Set-up** menu in the Instrument panel. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. Lightly pull the left paddle for down-shifts or lightly pull the right paddle for up-shifts.
   **TRANSMISSION COMMANDSHIFT SELECTED** will appear briefly in the Message centre when CommandShift™ is first selected.
   CommandShift™ can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.
   A gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **56, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

   ***Note:*** *If continued use of the CommandShift™ gear selector paddles is required, select **D** or **S**.*
4. To exit the CommandShift™ mode and return to **S** mode, lightly pull and hold the up-shift (**+**) paddle for approximately 1 second. To return to **D** mode, move the rotary gear selector back to the **D** position.

**WARNING: Before exiting the vehicle, always make sure the gear selector is in the P position, the engine is turned off, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the Smart key is removed from the vehicle.**

Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Never select **R** while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backwards. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Do not rev the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed while selecting **D** or **R**, or while the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected. Doing so can result in serious transmission and/or engine damage.

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary with a drive gear selected and the engine running. Always select **N** and apply the EPB if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected.

Do not use **N** for vehicle recovery. See **240, RECOVERY METHOD**.

## ROTARY GEAR SELECTOR

**P** should normally be selected before switching off the engine. If any other gear is selected at turn off, the selector will move to **P** before retracting into the centre console.

If the engine is switched off with **N** selected, the system will wait for 10 minutes before selecting **P**. This delay allows the vehicle enough time to be conveyed through a car wash.

## IF THE SELECTOR FAILS TO ELEVATE

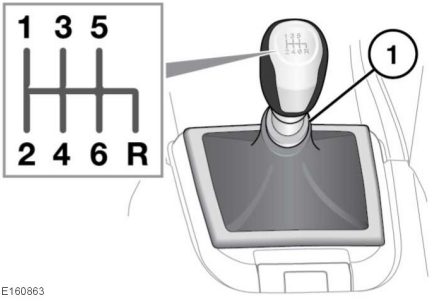
If the drive selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The selector should elevate as normal.

If the selector still fails to elevate, even if there is no obstruction, a fault in the system is indicated. The selector can still be used in the lowered position. Make sure **P** is selected before engine switch off. Have the fault rectified at the earliest opportunity.

## TRANSMISSION FAULT

In the event that the transmission develops a fault, a warning message may be displayed in the Message centre and only limited gears may become available. You should seek qualified assistance immediately.

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION




Lift the collar (**1**) when selecting Reverse (**R**) gear.

Never attempt to engage Reverse (**R**) gear while the vehicle is in forward motion. This may result in serious transmission damage and costly repairs.

A gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **56, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

**Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users.**

**This vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low-slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.**

DSC is enabled automatically at the start of each ignition cycle.

DSC maintains vehicle stability, even in critical driving situations, when accelerating and when starting from a standstill. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer and oversteer and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

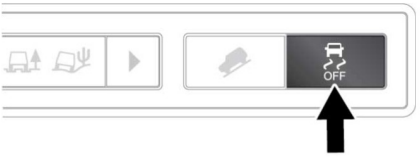
## SWITCHING DSC OFF

**Safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling DSC. In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that you do not disable DSC.**

DSC must be switched off when traction devices are fitted. See **226, USING SNOW CHAINS**.

In some driving conditions it may be appropriate to disable DSC to improve traction. These conditions include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow, or when on a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.




E161769

To disable DSC, press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch. The DSC OFF warning lamp will illuminate. See **115, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**. Deactivating DSC also reduces the level of Electronic Traction Control (ETC) intervention and may lead to an increase in wheel spin.

## SWITCHING DSC ON

If DSC has been switched off, press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch to re-enable DSC. Alternatively, select a new Terrain response special program.

***Note:*** *DSC is automatically disabled when the ignition is switched off.*

## ELECTRONIC TRACTION CONTROL (ETC)

ETC operates in conjunction with Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and is designed to assist when one or more wheels have lost traction; wheel spin, for example.

If a wheel loses traction, ETC will operate the brake on that wheel and may also manipulate the engine output, until the wheel regains traction. The amber DSC warning lamp in the Instrument panel will flash to inform the driver that ETC is operating.

## ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

The Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors road and driver inputs. It detects rough road and off-road conditions, optimises the vehicle's suspension settings to suit each surface type and adjusts control for greater ride comfort.

Adaptive dynamics is also linked to the Terrain response dynamic program, modifying the suspension settings for a more sporting character.

If **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre, the vehicle can still be driven. The fault may be temporary. If the fault persists, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## IMPORTANT INFORMATION

**Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion.**

**Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine turned off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.**

**If the red brake warning indicator illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.**

**Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.**

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

## STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide even with the brakes applied. This is because without wheel rotation, the ABS cannot determine vehicle movement.

To counteract this, briefly release the brakes to allow some wheel rotation. Then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

## EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, the EBA system will automatically boost the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly, but driving conditions mean that the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) operates on the front wheels, the EBA system will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **54, BRAKE (AMBER)**. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance.

## ELECTRONIC BRAKE FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

The EBD system controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle, for example), the EBD system will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, the EBD system will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.

A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the red brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. See **53, BRAKE (RED)**. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

## AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

⚠ **The AEB system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.**

⚠ **Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

***Note:*** *The AEB system is an option in some markets.*

***Note:*** *The fitment of the AEB system is market and model dependent.*

The AEB system uses the forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to identify a collision risk. AEB and Forward collision warning are enabled every time the vehicle is switched on but may be disabled via the instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *In order for the AEB system to work correctly, make sure that the windscreen is kept clean and the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers or any other objects.*

AEB is provided to mitigate the severity, and in some instances avoid a rear-end collision between the host vehicle and other vehicles that are in its forward path.

When a collision risk is detected, a Forward collision warning is displayed in the message centre. If avoiding action is not taken and a collision is not avoidable, the brakes will automatically be applied. After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes will only be applied for a few seconds.

If the AEB system has started to engage, the driver can override it's operation via steering or accelerator inputs, causing the system to disengage. This is to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

***Note:*** *The efficiency of the system is dependent on the condition of the road surface and the condition of the vehicle's tyres, braking system and vehicle speed.*

AEB will not operates if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.
- The cameras are dirty or obstructed.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) or above 80 km/h (50 mph).
- When visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions (for example, heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.).

***Note:*** *On initial vehicle start-up, the AEB system may require an initialization period before it is fully functional. This is indicated by a warning message in the message centre. During this period the efficiency of the AEB system is limited.*

It is recommended that AEB is deactivated when:

- The vehicle is driven off-road.

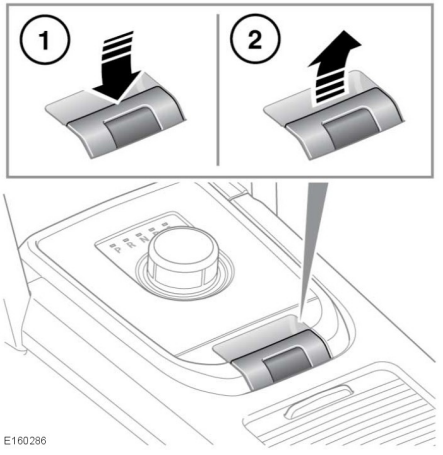
## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

**Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake warning lamp is illuminated or the EPB warning lamp is flashing. Seek qualified assistance urgently.**

The EPB system operates on the rear wheels; therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.

Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.

***Note:*** *If the vehicle is used in severe off-road conditions (e.g., wading, deep mud, etc.), extra maintenance and adjustment of the EPB will be required. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for more information.*




1. With the ignition turned on, press the brake pedal, then press down and release the EPB switch. This will release the EPB.
2. With the vehicle stationary, pull up and release the EPB switch. This will apply the EPB. The parking brake warning lamp will illuminate to indicate that the EPB is applied. See **53, PARKING BRAKE (RED)**.

If the system detects a fault while the EPB is operating, the red parking brake warning lamp will flash, accompanied by a warning in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *The red parking brake warning lamp will continue to be illuminated for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been turned off.*

If the system detects a fault with the EPB system, the amber brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a warning in the Message centre. See **54, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle will be brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps will not be illuminated.

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied, or repeated use of the EPB to slow the vehicle, may cause serious damage to the brake system.

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), pulling up on the EPB switch and holding, gives a gradual reduction in the speed. The brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a warning tone and a warning message in the Message centre. The stop lamps will illuminate. See **53, BRAKE (RED)**.

***Note:*** *Automatic release of the EPB is only possible when the driver's door is fully closed or the driver's seat belt is buckled.*

To delay the automatic release, hold the EPB switch in the applied position and release it at the desired point. The EPB system gradually releases to assist in a smooth drive away.

**Vehicles with automatic transmission**

The EPB is automatically applied when Park (**P**) is selected.

If the vehicle is stationary with the EPB applied and the transmission is engaged in Drive (**D**) or Reverse (**R**), pressing the accelerator pedal will release the EPB and allow the vehicle to move off.

***Note:*** *At the start of a journey, EPB release times may be extended when changing from **P** or Neutral (**N**). This is to allow for increased gear engagement times.*

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB will automatically release to allow a smooth drive away.

**Vehicles with manual transmission**

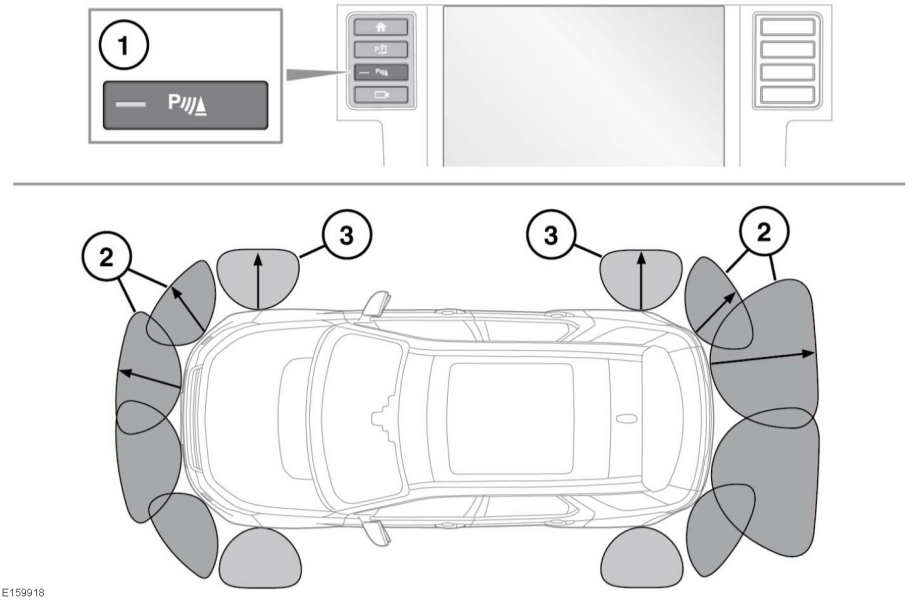
The EPB will be applied automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).

To prevent this automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

If the vehicle is stationary with the engine running and the EPB applied, pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the clutch pedal to engage a gear, will release the EPB automatically and allow the vehicle to move off.

***Note:*** *Automatic release will only operate in first, second and reverse gears.*

## USING THE PARKING AID




1. Parking aid button.
2. Parking aid sensor detection zones.
3. 360° Park Distance Control sensor detection zones.

**Parking aids and 360° Park Distance Control sensors will not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring.**

The Parking aid and 360° Park Distance Control sensors may not detect some obstructions, for example narrow posts or small objects close to the ground.

If accessories, e.g., tow bar, are fitted to the rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when reversing. The rear sensors will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.

***Note:*** *If a trailer is connected to a Land Rover approved trailer socket, the rear sensors will be disabled.*

The Parking aid and 360° Park Distance Control systems assist the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front, side, and rear of the vehicle will be displayed on the Touch screen.

The Parking aid system is automatically activated when reverse gear is selected.

The indicator on the Parking aid button will illuminate to inform the driver that the system is active. To switch the Parking aid system off, press the button.

When the Parking aid system is switched off, the system will remain off until the next ignition cycle, reverse gear is selected, or the Parking aid button is pressed again.

***Note:*** *If the system does not detect an object likely to come into close proximity with the vehicle, it will not display any tracking information in the Touch screen.*

When in reverse gear, both the front, side and rear sensors are active, enabling complete sensor detection around the whole perimeter of the vehicle. When in a forward gear, only the front and side sensors are active.

When objects are detected, the Parking aid system will emit a warning tone which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to an object. The tone becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300 mm (12 ins).

***Note:*** *The warning tone will stop when the distance between the vehicle and the object remains constant.*

The Parking aid and 360° Park Distance Control sensors operate at speeds up to 16 km/h (10 mph).

## PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone will sound, the switch indicator will flash. Also a graphic and the message **Parking Aid is not available. Please consult your dealer** will be displayed on the Touch screen. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

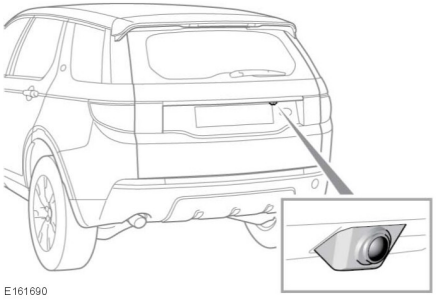
## REAR CAMERA

**It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.**

Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

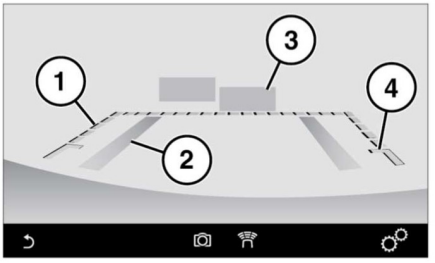
The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, for example, ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications.

If the vehicle is fitted with a rear camera, this has priority over the Parking aids display.


E161690

The rear camera is located on the tailgate (see illustration).

When reverse gear is selected, the screen automatically displays a wide angle, colour image from the rear of your vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing guidelines and an indication of which sensors are active.




E164947

1. Dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including exterior mirrors).
2. Solid line: The projected path based on current steering wheel position.
3. Parking sensor activation: A coloured area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
4. Tailgate access guideline: Do not reverse beyond this point if tailgate access is required.

To cancel the Rear camera display at any time, push the **HOME** menu button or touch the back soft key.

To adjust the camera settings while in reverse, touch anywhere on the Touch screen to display the user options.

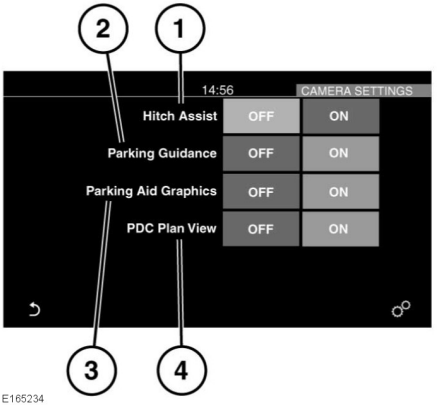
For vehicles fitted with only a rear camera, touch the icon for the feature required and then the back icon:

Touch to enable/disable the Park assist guidance lines.

Touch to enable/disable the sensor/s active graphics.

Touch to enable/disable Hitch assist guidance lines. Use this feature to aid the process of guiding the vehicle to a towing hitch. A single line is displayed as the reversing guideline. See **96, HITCH GUIDANCE**.

For vehicles fitted with a Surround camera system:



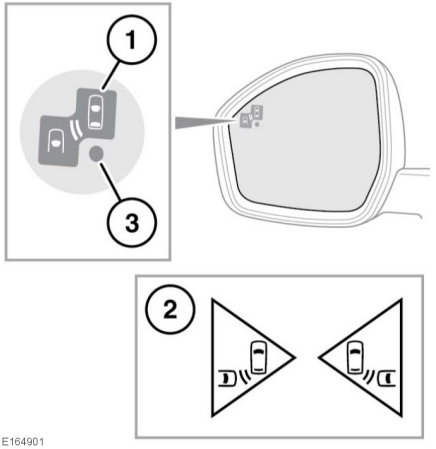

E165234

1. Hitch Assist, select OFF or ON. See **96, HITCH GUIDANCE**.
2. Parking Guidance, select OFF or ON.
3. Parking Aid Graphics, select OFF or ON.
4. PDC Plan View, select OFF or ON.

The Rear camera display on the Touch screen will discontinue when either of the following apply:

- A forward gear is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- A forward gear is selected and/or vehicle speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

## REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION




E164901

**The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.**

***Note:*** *RTD is automatically disabled when a trailer is connected and when Park assist is active.*

In addition to the functionality provided by the rear view camera, the RTD system provides a warning to the driver of any moving vehicle, at either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing manoeuvre.

An amber warning icon (**1**) will flash in the relevant exterior mirror and an audible warning will be emitted to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. The rear view camera screen or the parking aid screen will also show a warning icon (**2**) on the relevant side(s) of the screen. To switch between the rear view camera and the parking aid screen, touch the camera image or the **Cameras** icon accordingly.

The system can be enabled or disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. When RTD is disabled, an amber dot (**3**) will be displayed in both exterior mirrors.

## REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION SENSORS

The RTD system will automatically disable if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** appears in the Message centre.

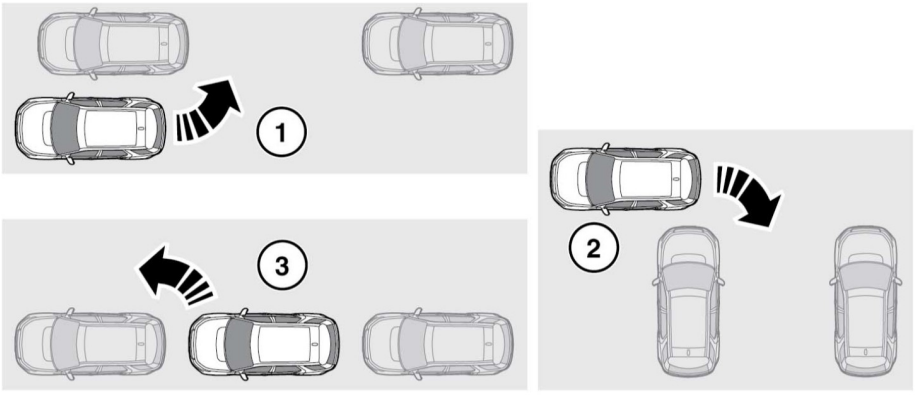
Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud and dirt.

If a fault with a radar sensor is detected, an amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on 1 side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault occurs, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## PARK ASSIST




E160697

Park assist is an aid to manoeuvring the vehicle in and out of parking spaces, and parking bays. Park assist takes control of the vehicle's steering system to manoeuvre the vehicle.

The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake throughout the parking manoeuvre.

***Note:*** *A Park assist manoeuvre can be cancelled at any point, by holding/turning the steering wheel or by pressing the Park assist button.*

Park assist comprises 3 different features:

1. Parallel parking: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular parking: For reversing into a parking space that is at 90° to the vehicle.
3. Parking exit: For exiting from a parallel parking space.

All Park assist instructions are displayed in the Message centre.

**Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring and always use your mirrors.**

**Park assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.**

Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g., narrow posts, small objects close to the ground, mesh fences and, in some circumstances, bicycles or motor cycles parked alongside the kerb.

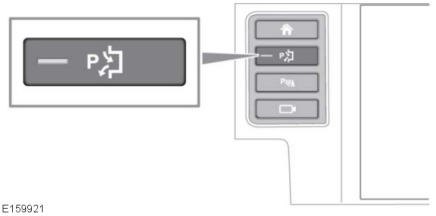
All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

Park assist must not be used if:
- A temporary spare wheel is in use.
- A sensor is damaged or the bumper is damaged sufficiently to affect a sensor mounting point.
- A sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, a trailer, stickers, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter, for example, a trailer.

***Note:*** *All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using Park assist.*

***Note:*** *During any Park assist manoeuvre, the Parking aid system will remain active and will sound when objects are detected near the vehicle.*

## SELECTING PARK ASSIST




A short press of the Park assist button will turn the system on. The indicator on the Park assist switch will illuminate.

The Park assist button can be used to scroll through the 3 Park assist options:

1. A first press of the button turns the system on, and selects **Parallel park**.
2. A second press of the button selects **Perpendicular park**.
3. A third press of the button selects **Parking exit**.
4. A fourth press turns the system off; the indicator will extinguish.

When selected, all instructions for the 3 Park assist options are displayed in the Message centre. Always take action when the text or audio alerts an instruction.

## USING PARK ASSIST

For assistance when parking, select **Parallel** or **Perpendicular park**.

As the vehicle is driven forwards, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

***Note:*** *For Park assist to search effectively, maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m (1.6 ft to 4.9 ft) between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles/obstacles between which you wish to park.*

***Note:*** *When first activated, Park assist searches for a space on the passenger side of the vehicle. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction (using the direction indicator).*

***Note:*** *The Park assist auto searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph). When Park assist is activated, a previous space may already have been located. To obtain a previous space on the other side, signal a turn in that direction.*

When a suitable space is found, a short confirmation tone is given and a message is displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *If Park assist senses that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking manoeuvre, a space will be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch Park assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.*

For assistance in exiting a parking space, select **Parking exit**.

For Parking exit to operate correctly, your vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in front of your vehicle.
- Parked in front and behind your vehicle.

***Note:*** *The Parking exit feature will only operate when your vehicle has been parallel parked. Parking exit will not manoeuvre your vehicle from a perpendicular parking space.*

Do not perform a Parking exit manoeuvre until the message **Drive forward with care** is displayed in the Message centre.

For all 3 Park assist features, follow the instructions in the Message centre until the parking or exiting manoeuvre has been completed.

Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake throughout.

***Note:*** *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph) during the manoeuvre, Park assist will display a message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 5 km/h (3 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph) Park assist will deactivate.*

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone will sound and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

**Instructional video - Using park assist.**

E166651

## PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

**Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. It is the driver's responsibility, at all times, to make sure that reversing manoeuvres are carried out safely.**

Park assist may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space, or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.
- The vehicle has been fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres or there is significant tyre wear.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flat bed truck, snow plough or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or curve.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice or snow.
- The weather is foggy, raining or snowing.
- The road surface is bumpy such as gravel.
- A tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- A trailer is connected.

  ***Note:*** *If a trailer is connected to a Land Rover approved trailer socket, the Park assist system will be disabled.*
- It encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.

- It encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- It encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.

## PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

**Park assist is not searching for a parking space**

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling at a speed above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.

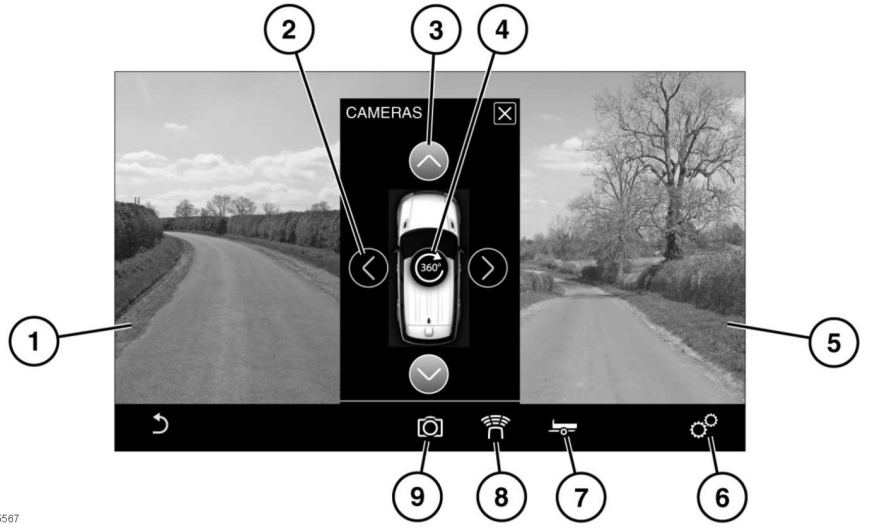
**Park assist does not offer a certain parking space**

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.
- The space may not be large enough or there may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven too far away (more than 1.5 metres [5 feet]) from a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven too close (within 41 cm [16 inches]) to a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in reverse. Park assist will only search for a parking space when the vehicle is travelling in a forward direction.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

**Park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space**

One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **128, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

## SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM




E165567

**It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.**

To turn on the Surround camera system, press the camera button on the left side of the touch screen or select **Cameras** in Extra features. See **80, EXTRA FEATURES**.

To view the camera menu screen touch the camera icon (**9**).

1. Left side split screen image.
2. Camera selection arrow (not selected).
3. Camera selection arrow (camera selected).
4. 360° view: Touch to display a birds-eye view of the vehicle and it's immediate surroundings using all 4 cameras.
5. Right side split screen image.
6. Touch to select the Camera settings menu.
   - Hitch Assist, select OFF or ON.
   - Parking Guidance, select OFF or ON.
   - Parking Aid Graphics, select OFF or ON.
   - PDC Plan View, select OFF or ON.
7. Touch to select Trailer assist. Before towing, select to add a trailer to the system or select a trailer already entered into the system. To add a trailer, follow the on-screen instructions.
8. Touch to select Parking aids. See **122, USING THE PARKING AID**.
9. Touch to select Surround cameras.

A maximum of 2 views can we displayed at one time (instead of the 360° view). To change a camera view if 2 views selected, one of the views has to be deselected first.

When shown, touch to enlarge to full screen or a wider view image.

General information:

The 4 surround cameras are located on the centre of the lower front grill, on the tailgate and underneath each of the exterior mirrors.

- The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.
- To maintain optimum performance, the cameras should be kept free from ice, frost and dirt. See **197, SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.

**Camera shortcuts**

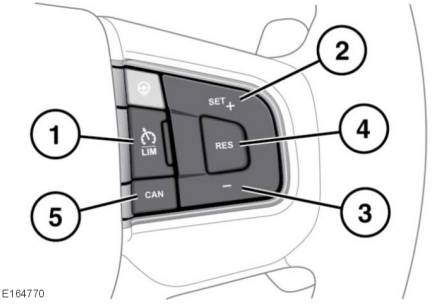
Press the Camera hard button for the following shortcut options:

- When in Reverse (**R**):
  - Press once to select the **Rear Junction** view.
  - Press twice to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Press a third time to return to the **Rear Junction** view.
- When in a forward gear, at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph):
  - Press once to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Press twice to select the **Rear Junction** view.
  - Press a third time to return to the **T Junction View**.
- When in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):
  - Press once to select the **Plan View**.
  - Press twice to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Press a third time to select the **Rear Junction** view.

## ASL CONTROLS

ASL allows a speed limit to be set that the driver does not wish to exceed. When a speed has been set, the engine will respond normally up to the set speed. Further accelerator pressure will not increase the speed beyond the set speed unless sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown) is applied. If kickdown is initiated, ASL will be suspended. ASL will reactivate once the vehicle's speed drops below the set speed.

**In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed.**




1. **LIM**: Press to switch between Cruise control and ASL. The ASL indicator will illuminate when ASL is active. The Cruise control and ASL systems cannot be used simultaneously.

   When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either Cruise control or ASL, will automatically be recalled and made active. The set speed will not be recalled.

   ***Note:*** *ASL operates at all vehicle speeds. A vehicle speed can be set from upwards of 32 km/h (20 mph).*

2. **SET+**: Press to set or increase the speed limit. The set speed limit will be displayed in the Message centre.
3. Press (**-**) to decrease the speed limit. The set speed limit will be displayed in the Message centre.
4. **RES**: Press to resume ASL assistance. ASL will only resume if the vehicle's speed is less than the set speed and greater than 32 km/h (20 mph). If these criteria are not met, a message will be displayed in the Message centre.
5. **CAN**: Press to temporarily suspend ASL assistance. ASL can also be temporarily suspended by applying sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown).

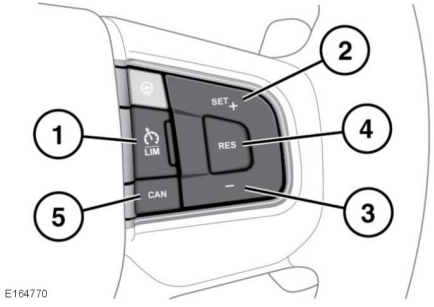
## USING CRUISE CONTROL

**In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driver intervention may be required.**

***Note:*** *Cruise control is not available when using Hill Descent Control (HDC) or when a Terrain response special program has been selected, except for the Grass/Gravel/Snow program.*

***Note:*** *Do not use Cruise control when driving off-road.*

The Cruise control system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.




1. **LIM**: Press to switch between ASL and Cruise control. The cruise control warning lamp will illuminate to confirm Cruise control is operational. See **56, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.
2. **SET+**: Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed.

   ***Note:*** *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed will be displayed as a marker on the speedometer or a numeric display in the Message centre. The set speed can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD), if enabled.*
   The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator.

   ***Note:*** *Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds above 30 km/h (18 mph).*
3. Press (-) to decrease the set speed.
4. **RES**: Press to resume the set speed.

   **RES** should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.
5. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.
   Cruise control will also be cancelled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to Neutral (N), or if HDC or Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) are activated.

***Note:*** *If the accelerator pedal is pressed to override Cruise control for a period of more than 5 minutes, Cruise control will be cancelled.*

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is designed to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead, or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. A speed may be set at between 32 km/h (20 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). The set speed will be displayed in the Message centre.

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle, using engine control and the brakes.

**ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system. Additionally, ACC will not react to:**

- **Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.**
- **Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.**

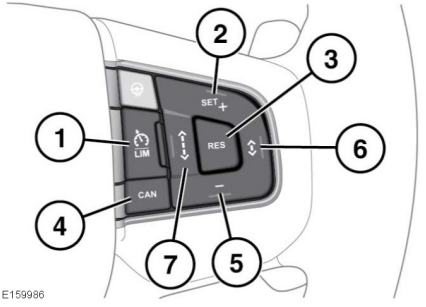
The ACC system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle, to detect objects ahead.

The radar sensor is mounted at the front of the vehicle, behind the duct in the lower cooling aperture, to provide a clear view forward for the radar beam.

- Use ACC only when conditions are favourable, i.e., main roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Do not use during abrupt or sharp turns, e.g., traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles or areas shared with pedestrians.
- Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.
- Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.
- Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the radar sensor from operating.

## USING ACC

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time, by the use of the brake or accelerator pedals.




1. **LIM**: Press to switch between ASL and ACC. The ACC warning lamp will illuminate to confirm ACC is operational. See **56, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.
2. **SET +**: Press to set the vehicle's current speed as the set speed. While ACC is enabled, further pressing of the button will raise the set speed above the vehicle's current speed. The speed of the vehicle will gradually increase to reach the new set speed.
3. **RES**: Press to resume the ACC set speed after it has been disengaged.
4. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.
5. Press (**-**) to decrease the set speed. The speed of the vehicle will gradually decrease to reach the new set speed.

6. Press to decrease the Follow mode gap. See **135, ENTERING FOLLOW MODE**.
7. Press to increase the Follow mode gap.

## ENTERING FOLLOW MODE

**When in Follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.**

***Note:*** *Follow mode is an integral function of ACC. You cannot disengage Follow mode and still use Cruise control to maintain your speed.*

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator and the set road speed will be maintained.

If a vehicle ahead enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, your vehicle's speed will adjust automatically until the gap to the vehicle ahead corresponds to the gap setting. The vehicle is now in **follow mode**.

The Follow mode warning lamp will illuminate to confirm Follow mode is operational (see **55, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**).

The Message centre will display the gap set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle will then maintain the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
- A new gap setting is chosen.

If necessary, the vehicle's brakes will be automatically applied, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by ACC is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

***Note:*** *Driver braking will cancel ACC.*

If ACC predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, then an audible warning will sound while ACC continues to brake. **DRIVER INTERVENE** will be displayed in the Message centre. Take immediate action.

When in Follow mode, the vehicle will automatically return to the set speed when the road ahead is clear, for instance when:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed, or changes lane.
- You change lane to either side or enter an exit lane.

The driver should intervene, if appropriate.

If a direction indicator is used, ACC will reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not actioned, the previous gap will be restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if ACC detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead or you are already in another lane.

## CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP

**It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.**

4 gap settings are available. The selected gap setting is displayed in the Message centre when the gap adjustment buttons are operated.

Each gap is indicated by an additional bar in front of the vehicle icon in the Message centre. After the ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap 3) will be automatically selected ready for ACC operation.

If the Terrain response, Grass-Gravel-Snow mode is selected, then the longest gap (gap 4) will initially be selected.

## OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

**Whenever the driver is overriding the ACC by pressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.**

The set speed and gap can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal while cruising at a constant speed or in Follow mode. If the vehicle is in Follow mode when the ACC is overridden, the Follow mode warning lamp will go out and **CRUISE OVERRIDE** will be displayed in the Message centre. When the accelerator is released, the ACC function will operate again and the vehicle's speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if Follow mode is active.

## QUEUE ASSIST

Queue assist is an enhancement of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and, when active, will follow a vehicle ahead to a standstill. It is intended for use in lines of traffic on major roads, where minimal steering is required.

If a vehicle ahead slows to a halt, Queue assist will bring the vehicle to a stop and hold it stationary.

While the vehicle is held stationary, Queue assist will request the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to apply if:

- The driver cancels Queue assist.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 2 minutes.
- Driver intention to exit the vehicle is detected.
- A malfunction is detected.

As the vehicle ahead moves away, a brief press on the accelerator will resume ACC operation.

At very low speed, Queue assist may stop for stationary objects, e.g., when the vehicle ahead changes lane to reveal a stationary object. The vehicle's radar cannot always distinguish between a stationary vehicle and a fixed object like a road sign, drain cover or temporary barrier. This may cause unexpected braking or cancellation, and the driver should intervene if appropriate.

## ACC AUTO OFF

ACC will disengage, but not clear the memory when:

- The **CANCEL** button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
- Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.
- Certain Terrain response modes are selected, i.e., Sand and Mud ruts.
- The difference between the vehicle's current speed and the set speed is too great.
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period, i.e., more than 5 minutes. See **136, OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE**.
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached.
- Maximum engine revolution speed is reached. 5000 rpm for a diesel engine and 7000 rpm for a petrol engine.

ACC will disengage, and clear the memory when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the ACC system.

## RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

**RES** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

By pressing the **RES** button after ACC has been cancelled (e.g. after braking), ACC will become active again provided that the set speed memory has not been erased. The original set speed will be resumed (unless a vehicle ahead causes the Follow mode to become active) and the set speed will be displayed in the Message centre. Queue assist may be resumed above 10 km/h (6 mph).

***Note:*** *When the set speed is resumed, the rate of acceleration is influenced by the previously set Follow mode gap. A closer set gap will promote greater acceleration.*

***Note:*** *When resuming a set speed while in a curve, acceleration is reduced. A more severe curve will reduce acceleration further. Remember that ACC and Queue assist are primarily for use when minimal steering is required.*

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ACC

During some situations, ACC may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible alarm will sound, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** in the Message centre, if ACC detects:

- A failure has occurred while the system is active.
- That using maximum ACC braking only is not sufficient.

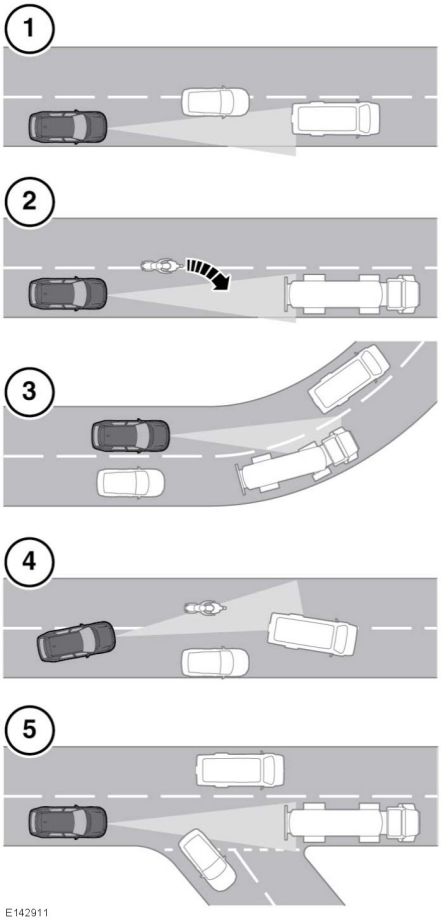
***Note:*** *ACC only operates when the gear selector is in Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**).*

***Note:*** *When engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal ACC operation.*

***Note:*** *When braking is applied by ACC, the vehicle's brake lamps will illuminate.*

***Note:*** *When Intelligent stop/start is fitted, it may operate during a Queue assist stop. Press the accelerator pedal for longer than normal to restart the engine and move off.*

## DETECTION BEAM ISSUES




E142911

Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.
2. When a vehicle edges into your lane. The vehicle will only be detected once it has moved fully into your lane.
3. There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when going into and coming out of a bend.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of your lane. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these situations ACC may operate unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

## ACC MALFUNCTION

If a fault occurs while ACC or Follow mode is operational, ACC will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly in the Message centre and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**.

If a fault with ACC or any related system occurs at any other time, the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE** will be displayed. It will not be possible to activate ACC in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow or ice on the radar sensor or cover may inhibit ACC operation. Fitting of a vehicle front protector or metallised badges may also affect ACC operation.

If this occurs in ACC cruise/Follow mode, the audible alarm sounds and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed briefly. The message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** will then be displayed.

***Note:*** *The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.*

Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. If the obstruction is present when ACC is inactive (e.g., on initial starting or with ACC switched off), the message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** will be displayed.

Tyres other than those recommended for your vehicle may have different circumferences. This can affect the correct operation of ACC.

## FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION

**The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.**

**Forward alert uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive cruise control. The same performance limitations apply, see 134, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.**

Forward alert can be enabled/disabled via the Driving Features in the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The warning lamp in the Instrument panel illuminates when Forward alert is enabled. See **56, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.

Forward alert provides limited detection and warning of objects close ahead while the vehicle is moving forwards. If a vehicle or object ahead is within the user defined sensitivity area, a warning tone will sound and the **FORWARD ALERT** message will be displayed in the Message centre. Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) will be activated. See **118, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

The driver must take appropriate action immediately.

Sensitivity of the function can be adjusted only when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is disengaged. Adjust as follows:

- Using the steering wheel ACC buttons, press the gap decrease button to display the current setting in the Message centre and then press again to decrease the sensitivity of the alert.
- Press the gap increase button to display the current setting in the Message centre and then press again to increase the sensitivity of the alert.

**FWD ALERT <----->** is displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *The Forward alert set gap is retained when the ignition is switched off.*

## ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST

The system may not react to slow moving vehicles and will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.

Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large (e.g. to avoid a collision).

The system utilises the same radar sensor as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Forward alert - the same limitations of performance apply.

When ACC is fitted, Advanced emergency brake assist is available at speeds above approximately 7 km/h (5 mph) and will function even if Forward alert and ACC are switched off. It improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.

If the risk of collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, Advanced emergency brake assist is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See **118, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

***Note:*** *Braking performance will only be improved if the driver applies the brakes.*

If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without Advanced emergency brake assistance. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the fault rectified.

## INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING

**The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.**

**The system will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles that are not travelling in the same direction as your vehicle.**

**Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large (e.g., to avoid a collision).**

**Intelligent emergency braking uses the same radar sensor as Adaptive cruise control and Forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply. See 134, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW.**

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is fitted, Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) is available at all speeds and will function even if ACC and Forward alert are switched off. The purpose of IEB is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable.

If an imminent risk of a collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, IEB will apply the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** is displayed in the Message centre and the system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If the radar sensor is blocked, by snow or heavy rain, for example, or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## ECO PROGRAM

This program encourages a more efficient driving style and modifies vehicle settings to improve fuel economy.


E163229

Press the button to turn the ECO program on/off, a message will appear in the Message centre.

When selected, engine and transmission settings are automatically changed to promote an efficient driving style and to save fuel.

An instantaneous driving style rating is provided via the trip computer display. This rates driving style against efficient driving principles. See **50, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

Heating and ventilation settings are modified by making small changes to the rate of heating and cooling. Certain features are switched off or modified to reduce energy consumption. Feature settings can be changed as desired, once ECO program is active. For more information refer to the Heating and ventilation section of the handbook.

Additional vehicle efficiency data and tips are available in **ECO-Data** on the Extra features page.

***Note:*** *The ECO-data system will only begin displaying averaged data after the vehicle has travelled 1 km (0.6 miles).*

***Note:*** *The ECO-data system may not measure or record data when in some Terrain response modes, and/or if Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.*

***Note:*** *The ECO-data system only monitors driver inputs. Any automatic inputs from the vehicle, for example, throttle and brake force applied by the Adaptive cruise control system will not be measured. Data not being measured and recorded will be greyed out in the Instrument panel.*

**Instructional video - ECO Program.**

E166654

## TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION

Before venturing off-road, it is essential that inexperienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular, the Hill Descent Control (HDC) and Terrain response systems. Basic guidance for off-road driving can be found in the Land Rover Off-Road Driving handbook. This is a free download at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**.

Information relating to the suitability of each Terrain response program on different types of surface, can be found in the **4x4i** section of the **Extra features** menu.

E161767

Use the buttons to move through the program selections. The currently selected program icon will be displayed in the Message centre and the relevant LED indicator will illuminate.

***Note:*** *Changing between the special programs will alter various vehicle settings, e.g., engine revs while at the current accelerator pedal position may alter, or the steering feel might change. These changes are not dramatic but will be noticeable.*

It is advisable to experiment with the available settings in an environment that will not affect other road users.

## GENERAL PROGRAM (SPECIAL PROGRAMS OFF)

This program is compatible with all on and off-road conditions. If not already active, it should be selected before driving on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. Dry cobbles, tarmac, dry wooden planks, etc., all fall into this category.

This program should be selected once the need for a special program has passed. Once the special program has been deselected, all of the vehicle's systems will return to their normal settings, except for HDC. HDC will remain active if it was selected manually.

This general program also allows the Active Driveline system (if fitted) to automatically switch between 2 wheel drive and 4 wheel drive, dependent on driving conditions. This status can be viewed in the **4x4i** section of the **Extra features** menu.

***Note:*** *Permanent 4 wheel drive is maintained in all other Terrain response programs.*

## GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW

This program should be used where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material.

***Note:*** *For deep snow and gravel, it is recommended that the Sand program is selected.*

***Note:*** *If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in deep snow, switching Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) off may help. DSC should be switched on again, as soon as the difficulty is overcome.*

## MUD/RUTS

This program should be used for crossing terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft or uneven.

## SAND

This program should be used for terrain which is predominantly soft, dry sand or deep gravel.

***Note:*** *If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in extremely soft, dry sand, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome.*

If the sand to be crossed is damp/wet, and sufficiently deep enough to cause the wheels to sink into the surface, the Mud-Ruts program should be used.

## DYNAMIC

This program is associated with a driving style, rather than a type of terrain and optimises traction, handling and driveability, for maximum feedback and responsiveness. Select this program to exploit the vehicle's full on-road potential.

## DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

Hill Descent Control (HDC) is automatically engaged for some Terrain response programs. If required, HDC can be deselected or engaged independently of Terrain response. See **144, HDC CONTROLS**.

The HDC status will be displayed in the Message centre whether it is engaged, or disengaged, by the system or by the driver.

Although Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is automatically engaged when a special program is selected, it can be turned off, if required. See **115, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

## SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES

Use of an incorrect program will impair the vehicle's response to the terrain and can reduce the life of the suspension and drive systems.

If the system becomes partially inoperable for any reason, it may not be possible to select a special program.

If a participating vehicle system becomes temporarily inoperable, the General program will be automatically selected. Once the system returns to normal operation, the previously active program will be reactivated unless the ignition has been turned off in the meantime.

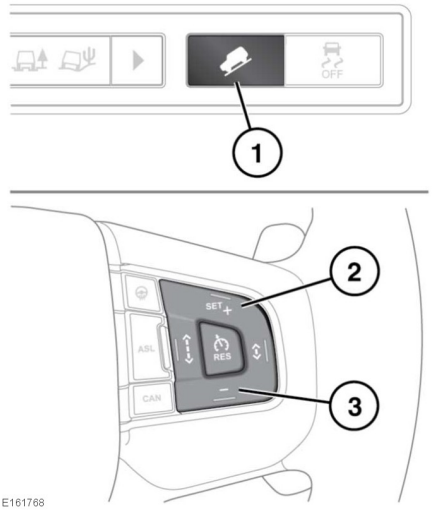
If you try to select an inappropriate special program, the relevant indicator will flash amber and the Message centre will provide further information. If the appropriate action is not taken within 60 seconds, the warnings will cease and the Message centre will show the active program.

If the system becomes completely inoperable, all of the special program indicators will be switched off and a relevant message will be displayed in the Message centre.

## HDC CONTROLS

Hill Descent Control (HDC) is designed to restrict the vehicle's speed to a set limit when travelling downhill.

**Do not attempt a steep descent if HDC is inoperative or warning messages are displayed.**




1. HDC on/off: HDC can be selected at any speed, but will only operate at speeds of less than 50 km/h (31 mph).
   For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the HDC can be used in Drive (**D**), Reverse (**R**) and all the CommandShift™ gears. When in **D**, the vehicle will select the most appropriate gear.
   For vehicles with a manual gearbox, the HDC can be used in 1st, 2nd and reverse gears.

   ***Note:*** *HDC is automatically selected by some of the Terrain response special programs.*

   ***Note:*** *HDC is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.*
   If the system's operation criteria have not been met, the HDC warning lamp will flash to indicate that the system has been selected but is not operating. See **56, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)**.
   A graphic will also be displayed in the Message centre showing the HDC target speed. When HDC is unable to operate, the display will be grey. The graphic indicates the range of target speeds available with the currently selected gear.
   If HDC is deselected while operating, the warning lamp will extinguish and the system will fade out, allowing the vehicle's speed to gradually increase.
   If HDC is already selected and the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph), HDC is suspended. The HDC indicator will flash and a message will appear in the Message centre.
   If the brake pedal is pressed when HDC is active, a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC will resume.
2. Increase the descent speed: The Cruise control (**+**) button will increase the HDC descent speed in 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments. Press and hold the (**+**) button for larger incremental increases, up to the maximum permissible target speed.

   ***Note:*** *Each gear has a predetermined maximum speed.*

   ***Note:*** *The vehicle's speed will only increase on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Use of the (+) switch may; therefore, not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.*

3. Decrease the descent speed: The Cruise control (-) button will decrease the HDC descent speed in 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments. Press and hold the (-) button for larger incremental increases, down to the minimum permissible target speed.

   ***Note:*** *Each gear has a predetermined minimum speed.*

If a fault is detected in the HDC system, **HDC FAULT SYSTEM NOT AVAILABLE** will appear in the Message centre and HDC assistance will fade out.

If the fault is detected while the system is operating, HDC assistance will fade out. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

## GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

With HDC activated, if the vehicle is stopped on a slope using the brake pedal, GRC will become active (except in the Terrain response Sand program). During a hill ascent when the brake pedal is released, GRC will automatically delay and graduate the brake release, to allow the vehicle to move smoothly away. When descending a hill, a similar brake hold and gradual release is employed to provide a smooth transition into HDC control.

GRC operates in forward and reverse gears and requires no driver intervention.

## BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, the HDC system may cause brake temperatures to exceed their preset limits. If this occurs, the warning **HDC TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE** will be displayed in the Message centre. HDC will then fade out and become temporarily inactive.

Once the brakes have reached an acceptable temperature, the message will disappear (or the warning lamp will extinguish) and HDC will, if required, resume operation.

## WADE SENSING CONTROLS

**Wade sensing should not be used during off-road driving, as rapid increases in water depth cannot be detected in time to deliver a warning message to the driver.**

**When entering water from a steep gradient, the water level may rise rapidly.**

**The Wade sensing system cannot detect the true level of water if a layer of ice or snow exists on the surface.**

Parking aid will not operate when Wade sensing is active.

The wade sensing sensors are located on the underside of the exterior mirrors. The sensors, and the area below the sensors, must be kept clean and free from snow, ice, mud and other debris. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation.

If the exterior mirrors are in the fold position, Wade sensing will operate but will give false readings.

***Note:*** *The exterior mirrors must be in the normal (unfolded) position when using the Wade sensing system.*

Wade sensing aids the driver while driving through water. Wade sensing can be turned on and off from the Touch screen in **4x4i** or **Wade sensing** in the Extra features. When selected, the Touch screen will display the current water depth and the maximum wading depth. The system will warn the driver as the maximum depth for wading approaches. Warnings take the form of messages on the Touch screen, the Instrument panel, and a series of warning tones.

If system limitations are exceeded, the Touch screen view will grey out and the water depth will not be displayed.

Wade sensing is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph), or the gradient exceeds 10°. Wade sensing will automatically reactivate if the vehicle's speed drops back down to 10 km/h (6 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds, Wade sensing will automatically switch off.

***Note:*** *Wade sensing will not operate if the vehicle is fitted with fixed side steps. However, the system will operate with side tubes or deployable side steps if they are in the retracted position.*

***Note:*** *The Parking aid, Park assist and Intelligent stop/start systems are all disabled when Wade sensing is operating.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

**The Traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Traffic sign recognition system.**

The Traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror. This detects speed signs, no overtaking signs and variable overhead speed signs and displays symbols of the detected signs in the Message centre. Traffic signs with extra information (for example, reduced speed limits for wet road conditions) will also be detected and compared with the vehicle's systems (for example, rain sensor, wipers, etc.) and may also be displayed in the Message centre. Speed limit information from the Navigation system will be displayed for roads with no signage.

***Note:*** *If Navigation is not available, or the Off-road navigation is selected, the Traffic sign recognition system will use the camera only.*

***Note:*** *Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

The Traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via **Driving Features** in the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The system will operate up to a maximum speed of 250 km/h (155 mph).

The 3 basic functions of the Traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

- Speed limit detection: A corresponding sign will be displayed in the Message centre.
- Speed alert: When the vehicle's speed is greater than (or equal to) the detected speed limit, a flashing red ring, around the displayed speed limit sign, will be displayed in the Message centre.
  Speed alert can be switched on/off, or the settings can be adjusted to display 3 different settings:
  - When the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.
  - When the vehicle's speed is 10 km/h or 5 mph* above the detected speed limit.
  - When the vehicle's speed is 20 km/h or 10 mph* above the detected speed limit.

  ***Note:*** **Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in km/h or mph.*
- No overtaking zone: When a no overtaking sign has been detected, the system will also display a corresponding sign in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *The Traffic sign recognition system will not detect road markings or situations with no signage, for example, railway crossings, etc.*

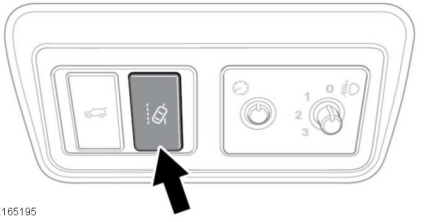
**Traffic sign recognition limitations**

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

- Travelling in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Concealed or covered signage.
- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.
- The windscreen area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, misted over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
- Navigation information is incorrect.
- Travelling in an area not covered by the Navigation system.
- Non-conforming road signs.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

**The Lane departure warning system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Lane departure warning system.**




Press the button to disable/enable the Lane departure warning system.

When enabled, an indicator lamp will illuminate in the Message centre to confirm. The status of the system is also shown by the changes of the lane icon colours and the vehicle's position icon within the indicator lamp.

The Lane departure warning system can also be switched off/on via **Driving Features** in the Instrument panel menu. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:*** *When the ignition is switched on, the Lane departure warning system will remain at the previous on or off status and also retain the previous settings.*

The Lane departure warning system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror.

***Note:*** *Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

If the vehicle crosses either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate indicator, then the Lane departure warning system will alert the driver via one of the methods below:

- Steering wheel vibration (haptic feedback).
- Graphical displays in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *The Lane departure warning system will only provide warnings to the driver. It will not assist in changing the direction of the vehicle or operate any of the vehicle's systems.*

***Note:*** *The Lane departure warning system will not detect unmarked edges of the road.*

The sensitivity of the Lane departure warning system can be adjusted between **High** or **Normal** sensitivity via **Driving Features** in the Instrument panel menu.

When set at **Normal** sensitivity, the Lane departure warning system will suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected, as listed below:

- Operation of the accelerator pedal.
- Significant movement of the steering wheel.
- Operation of the brakes.
- Activation of the appropriate indicator.

When set at **High** sensitivity, the Lane departure warning system will not suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected (unless the appropriate indicator is activated).

If the Lane departure warning system detects a fault or is not available, then the General warning/information message (amber) will be displayed in the Message centre. See **53, GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

**Lane departure warning limitations**

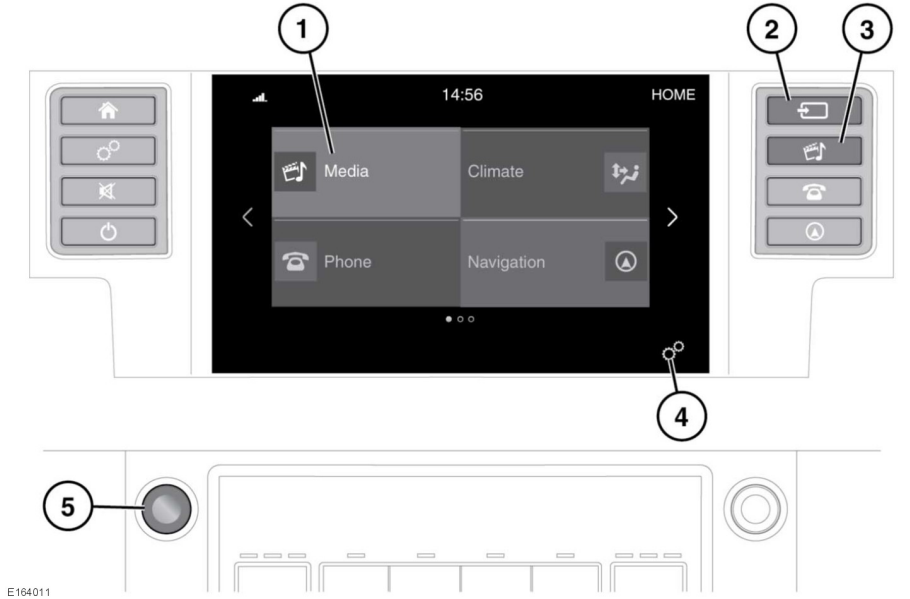
- When set at **High** sensitivity, the vehicle's speed needs to be between 50 km/h (30 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph)*.
- When set at **Normal** sensitivity, the vehicle's speed needs to be between 60 km/h (40 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph)*.

  ***Note:*** **Dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in km/h or mph.*
- The lane in use must be wider than 2.5 m (8.2 ft).
- No warning given if the correct indicator is active.
- Not active in off-road conditions.
- Not available when the sand or mud-ruts, Terrain response programs are selected.

The performance of the Lane departure warning system may also be affected in the following conditions:

- Adverse driving conditions. For example heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Worn, damaged or temporary lane markings, for example, road works, etc.
- Tight deviations of the roads and their gradients.
- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.
- Driving very close to another vehicle.

## MEDIA CONTROLS




**In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

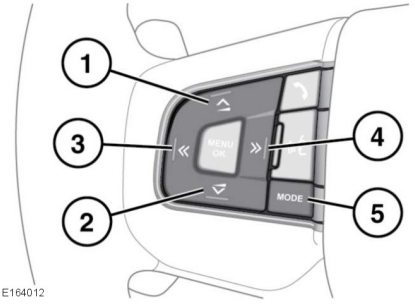
**Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.**

1. Press to select the **RADIO** menu screen or the media screen for the last selected media source.
2. Media source: Press to select the media source list. Touch the required media source from the list:
   - **FM Radio**
   - **AM Radio**
   - **DAB Radio**
   - **Bluetooth***
   - **USB***
   - **iPod***
   - **AUX**

   ***Note:*** **Only a connected portable media or **Bluetooth**® device will appear on the Source list. Therefore, before selecting a device, the source media device has to be connected or paired (Bluetooth) to the vehicle.*
3. Press to select the **Media** system.
4. Touch to select the **General settings** menu screen. For the audio settings, select **Audio**. See **151, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. Press to switch the Audio system on/off, rotate to adjust the volume level.

   ***Note:*** *The Media system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the Media system on again, if required.*

## AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS




1. Press to increase the volume for any source.
2. Press to decrease the volume for any source.
3. Skip/scan backwards: Press to skip back to the beginning of the current track being played, or press and hold to scan backwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes when the button is released.
4. Skip/scan forwards: Press to skip forwards to the start of the next track, or press and hold to scan forwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes when the button is released.
5. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all of the available, or connected, media sources.

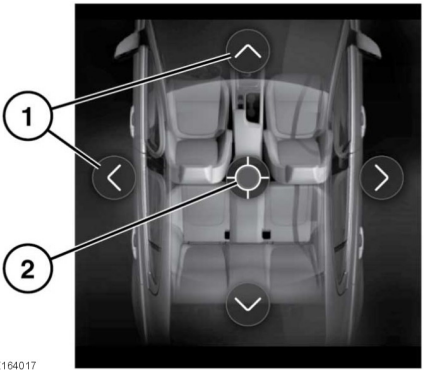
## AUDIO SETTINGS

To view the **Audio** settings menu, select **Audio** from the **General settings** menu.

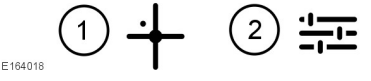
Audio settings contains the following options:

- **Traffic Announcement**. Turn on/off.
- **Sound**: Select to view the following options:
  - **Balance/Fade**.
  - **Bass/Mid/Treble**.
  - **Speed dependent volume**.
- **Radio**: These setting options are dependent on the radio source selected. See **152, AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS** or **153, DAB RADIO CONTROLS**.

To adjust the balance and fade settings, touch **Balance/Fade**.

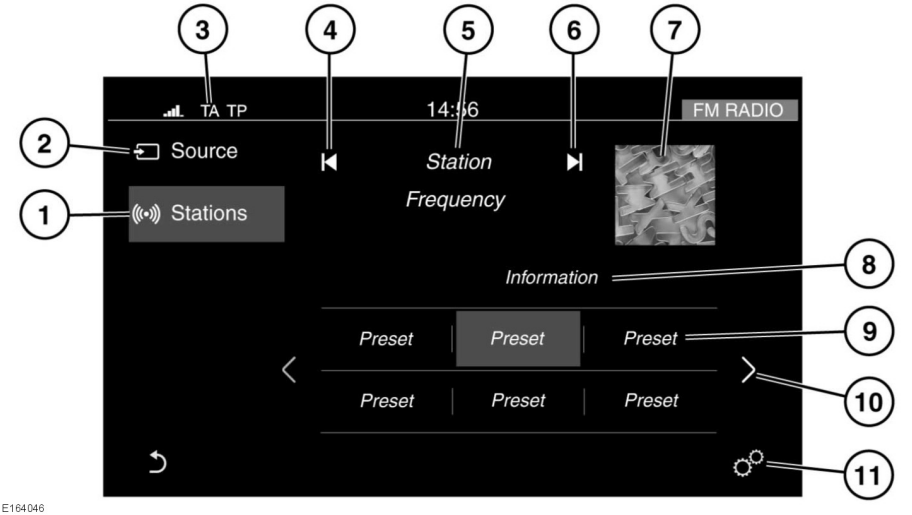



Touch the arrow soft keys (**1**) to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point (**2**) and 'drag' it to the required position. To return to the default setting, touch the sound focal point (**2**).




1. Touch the symbol to move from the **Bass/Mid/Treble** screen to the **Balance/Fade** screen.
2. Touch the symbol to move from the **Balance/Fade** screen to the **Bass/Mid/Treble** screen.

## AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



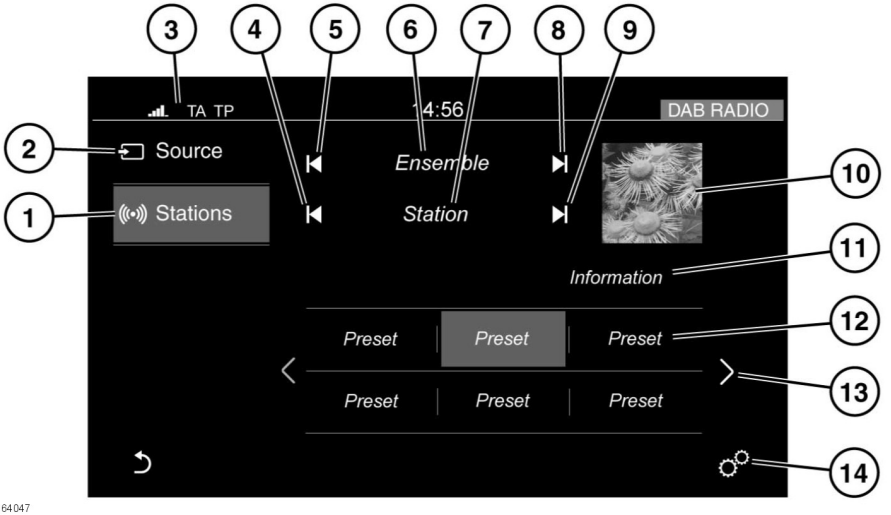

1. **Stations**: Touch to select the Station list for the chosen radio source.
2. **Source**: Touch to select the media source list. See **150, MEDIA CONTROLS**.
3. Status icons: Displays TA and TP (if selected).
4. Seek down: Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio station.

   ***Note:*** *In some markets, additional buttons are available to enable manual tuning.*
5. The selected station name and frequency.
6. Seek up: Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio station.

   ***Note:*** *In some markets, additional buttons are available to enable manual tuning.*
7. Waveband image (if available).
8. Information from the selected station.
9. Station presets:
   - Touch to tune to the station stored on that preset.
   - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset.
   - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to change to the next or previous preset station.
10. Touch to scroll through the preset stations.
11. Touch to select the **General settings** menu. Select **Audio** and then **Radio**, where the following features can be activated/deactivated:
    - **Manual tune**.
    - **Radiotext** (FM only).
    - **Alternative Frequency** (FM only).
    - **Regionalization** (FM only).

    ***Note:*** *Settings options may vary, depending on the market.*

## DAB RADIO CONTROLS




1. **Stations**: Touch to select the Station list for the selected waveband.
2. **Source**: Touch to select the media source list.
3. Status icons: Showing the connected phone's network, phone battery level and network signal strength, also TA and TP (if selected).
4. Seek down: Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
5. Seek down: Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio ensemble.
6. The selected radio ensemble name.
7. The selected radio station name.
8. Seek up: Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio ensemble.
9. Seek up: Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
10. Waveband image (if available).
11. Information from the selected station.
12. Station presets:
    - Touch and release to tune to the radio station stored on that preset.
    - Touch and hold to store the current radio station on that preset.
    - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to change to the next or previous preset radio station.
13. Touch to scroll through the preset stations.
14. Touch to select the **General settings** menu. Select **Audio** and then **Radio**, where the following features can be activated/deactivated:
    - **Radiotext**.
    - **Alternative Frequency**.
    - **DAB L-Band**.

**Instructional video - DAB radio.**

E166652

## PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the cubby box. Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g., a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary (AUX) device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

  ***Note:*** *Auxiliary devices have no Touch screen control.*

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the Touch screen to operate and search for the device.

Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

***Note:*** *The Audio system will play MP3, WMA and AAC files.*

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

***Note:*** *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.*

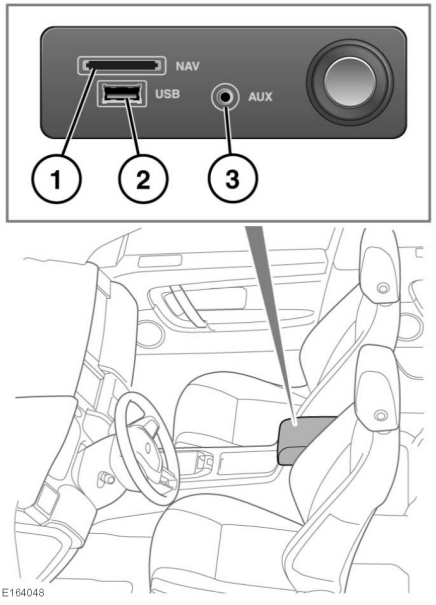
***Note:*** *Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to* ***USB Removable Device*** *or* ***Mass Storage Device*** *mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.*

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com**.

The **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the device's software version and the battery's condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar Land Rover.

## CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the Audio system. Make sure the device is suitable and complies with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's Audio system or the auxiliary device.




Connect the device into the appropriate socket:

1. SD card slot: Insert the SD card, until it clicks into place.

***Note:*** *The Navigation system, Voice and various telephone features will not function if the SD card is not correctly inserted into the slot.*
*The SD card slot should only be used for the SD card supplied for the vehicle to support Navigation, Voice and various telephone features. No other SD cards should be used, because the Media system will not play music, or display saved images from an SD card.*

***Note:*** *The installation of any additional content, or the modification of existing content of the SD card supplied for the vehicle, may render the SD card unusable in the Media system.*

2. USB socket.
3. 3.5 mm AUX socket.

There is a USB socket or sockets (depending on vehicle specification), located in the loadspace if third row seats are fitted. These sockets are not connected to the Media system and should only be used for charging a phone or device.

Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

***Note:*** *Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.*

***Note:*** *A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.*

***Note:*** *Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.*

***Note:*** *In some cases, if an iPhone is connected via a USB cable for music and also to a* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology device for other phone functions, the audio will stream through only the last connected port. For example, if a* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology device is the last connection made to the iPhone and the USB (iPod) lead is connected, no audio will be heard through the speakers via the USB (iPod) lead. Track title and time information will still be shown on the display. Audio output from the speakers will only be obtained if the user chooses* ***audio mode*** *on the* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology device. To address this issue, disconnect and reconnect your device's USB cable or open the iPod application on the iPhone, select the* ***Bluetooth*** *icon and select* ***Dock Connector*** *on the pop-up.*

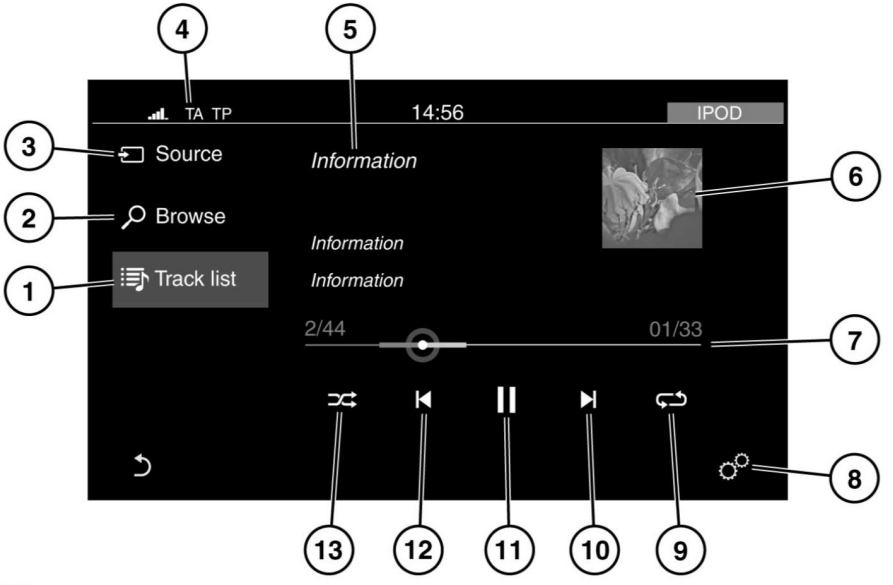
When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

***Note:*** *Options, such as* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle****, relate to the device currently playing; they will not apply to any subsequent device.*

The 3.5 mm AUX socket allows extra equipment (e.g., personal stereos MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the Audio system.

***Note:*** *iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.*

## PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS




E164049

The following portable devices can be used on the Media system: **iPod**, **USB**, **AUX** and **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices.

***Note:*** *Auxiliary devices have no Touch screen controls.*

1. **Track list**: Touch to select the list of tracks from the connected device.
2. **Browse**: Touch to select the menu screen for the required music or audio source subject list for the connected device: **Playlists**, **Artists**, **Albums**, **Songs**, etc.
3. **Source**: Touch to select the media source menu screen.

   ***Note:*** *The media source has to be connected to the vehicle before it will appear in the media source list.*

4. Status icons: Showing the connected phone's network, phone battery level and network signal strength, also TA and TP (if selected).
5. Information relating to the music or audio being played.
6. Image display:
   - If available, the album art for the current track being played will be displayed. The image will also appear on the Media soft key on the HOME page.
   - When a video (from a connected USB source only) is about to be played, an image from the video is displayed.
7. Progress bar: Drag the spot or touch the line to move forwards or backwards through the track.

8. Touch to select the **General settings** menu screen. **Audio** or **Bluetooth** settings can then be selected.
9. Continuous play: Touch to play the current track continuously.
10. Skip/scan forwards: Touch to skip forwards to the start of the next track, or, touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes when the soft key is released.
11. Pause/play: Touch to pause playback; touch again to resume playback.
12. Skip/scan backwards: Touch to skip back to the beginning of the current track being played, or, touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes when the soft key is released.
13. Shuffle: Touch to play random tracks from the current MP3 folder, USB folder or iPod playlist.

## PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or an approved iPod, you can control playback using the Touch screen controls.

If you are using a **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, you can control playback using the Touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.

Land Rover does not recommend the use of a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in-car use and may be damaged.

## CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

You can connect multiple devices simultaneously to the portable media interface and switch between them via the **Source** selector. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth** or **AUX**, to switch between modes.

The device docked first will remain the active device until you choose to change.

If, after changing to the newly-docked device, you change back to the first device, play will resume at the point you left it (USB and iPod only).

***Note:*** *You cannot use a USB hub to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.*

***Note:*** *Devices connected to the iPod and USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.*

## PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH DEVICE

For information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** device, see **161, PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE**.

For further information on **Bluetooth**® wireless technology, see **161, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

## LICENSING


E135227


E132539

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.


E132541

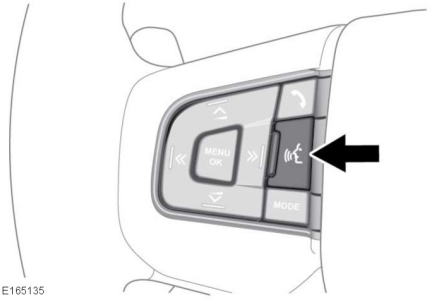

E132542

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## USING VOICE CONTROL

***Note:*** *The Voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, Land Rover cannot guarantee the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice system for compatibility with a particular accent group.*

***Note:*** *The Voice system will not operate unless the SD card supplied with the vehicle is inserted correctly into the SD card slot. See* ***155, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE****.*




To start a voice session, briefly press the voice button on the steering wheel. The **Teleprompter list** appears on the Touch screen. To cancel a voice session, press and hold the voice button.

***Note:*** *Briefly press the voice button during a voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.*

Teleprompter list: This list provides feedback and available commands for each stage of the voice session.

Voice symbol: This indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before saying a command.

***Note:*** *As the commands are listed before the system is ready to listen, it is important to wait for the voice symbol to appear, before saying a command.*

Say **Cancel** (at any time) to cancel the current voice command.

## NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

To request the display of Points Of Interest (POIs), say **Find next** with 1 of the following POI categories:

- **Find next** (**Petrol station/Petrol**).
- **Find next** (**Parking/Car park**).
- **Find next** (**Land Rover [Dealer]**).
- **Find next** (**Hospital**).
- **Find next** (**Golf course**).
- **Find next** (**Tourist information office**).
- **Find next** (**Restaurant**).
- **Find next** (**Shopping centre**).
- **Find next** (**Hotel/Motel**).
- **Find next** (say a Brand name) of the POI category.

***Note:*** *The word* ***Find next*** *must be followed immediately by a category.*

## BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION

**Bluetooth**® is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth**® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) and Message Access Profile (MAP).

***Note:*** *HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, your **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. This is done using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle (preferred method) or from the Touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

## TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the **Owners** section of the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com**, for a list of compatible phones.

***Note:*** *The **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.*

## PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE

A paired phone or device can be connected for different uses; phone or music. Pairing is normally only required once.

When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle automatically tries to re-connect to a previously paired **Bluetooth**® phone or device, if it is within range of the vehicle.

If not automatically connected, or to connect a new phone or device, follow one of the following pairing methods:

**Pairing using the phone or device (preferred method):**

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. Select **General settings**, then **Bluetooth**.
3. From the list, select **Make system discoverable**.
4. Switch on your phone or device's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device connection. Using your phone or device, search for and select your vehicle's **Bluetooth** connection (see your phone or device's operating instructions for more information).
5. A Passkey number appears on the phone or device. If this number matches the number on the Touch screen, touch **Yes**, or press **Pair** on the phone or device.

**Pairing using the Touch screen**

1. Switch on your phone or device's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device connection. Make sure that your phone or device is in **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your phone or device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
3. Select **General settings**.
4. From the displayed list, select **Bluetooth**.
5. The system searches for a phone or device and, if found, the phone or device displays on the screen.
   If the phone or device is not found, **NO DEVICES FOUND** displays.

   ***Note:*** *The phone/device list can store up to 4 entries.*
6. A Passkey number appears on the phone or device. If this number matches the number on the Touch screen, touch **Yes**.
7. Once a phone or device is paired, it appears on the connected device's list and on the **PHONE** screen and it appears in the **Bluetooth**, **List of paired devices** section.

**Instructional video - Pairing a Bluetooth device to the vehicle.**

E166647

## CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE OR DEVICE

Up to 4 mobile phones or devices can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only 2 can be connected and ready for use as a phone or device at any one time (one for phone and one for media).

**To connect a different paired phone to the vehicle**:

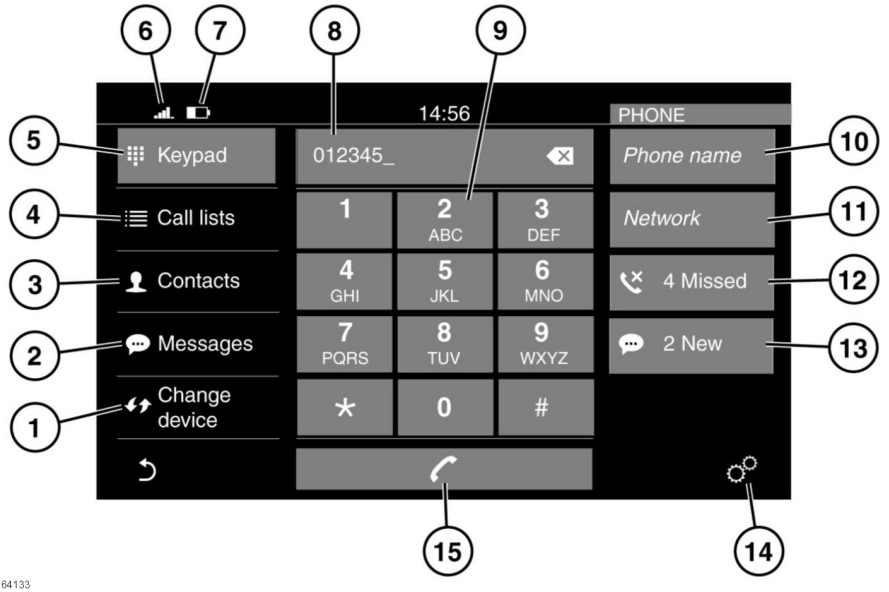
1. From the **PHONE** menu screen, select **Change device**. See **163, TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. A menu will appear. Select a paired device from the list.

## DELETING A PAIRED PHONE OR DEVICE

**To delete a phone or device from the system**:

1. In **General settings**, select **Bluetooth**.
2. From the list, select **List of paired devices**.
3. Select the phone or device to be deleted.
4. From the list, select **Delete pairing** to delete the phone or device from the system.

## TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW




E164133

For information on connecting a **Bluetooth®** phone or device. See **161, PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE**.

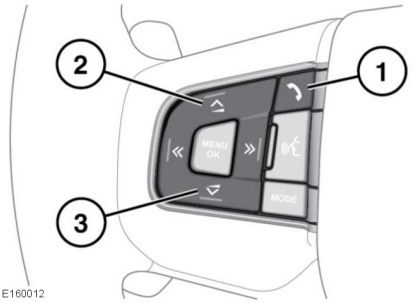
For information on mobile phone compatibility, see **161, TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

***Note:*** *Some Telephone system features will not operate unless the SD card supplied with the vehicle is inserted correctly into the SD card slot. See* ***155, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE****.*

1. **Change device**: Touch to search for a new, or change to another paired phone or device.
2. **Messages**: Touch to select the Messages inbox, or to create a new message.
3. **Contacts**: Touch to select the connected phone's Contacts list. Scroll through the list or use the alphas (A-C, D-F etc.) to find the contact more quickly.
4. **Call lists**: Touch to access the connected phone's Call lists.
5. **Keypad**: Touch to display the keypad.
6. Network signal strength icon.
7. The connected phone's battery level icon.
8. Status display: Displays the number or contact selected.
9. Keypad.
10. Name of the connected phone.
11. The connected phone's network provider.
12. Missed calls: Indicates any missed calls.
13. New messages: Indicates that a new message/s has been received.

14. Settings: Touch to display the **General settings** menu. Select **PHONE**, for the following options:
    - **Announce incoming messages**: Turn on/off.
    - **Refresh phonebook**: Select to refresh the connected phone's Phonebook.
15. Touch to make or answer a call (green button), or touch to end a call (red button).

## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS




1. Press to answer an incoming call. Press to make or end a call.
2. Press to increase the volume when in a call.
3. Press to decrease the volume when in a call.

## TELEPHONE SAFETY

**Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.**

**Always stow your mobile phone securely.**

**The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.**

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (6 inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

## CALL VOLUME

The phone call's volume is operated by the Audio system's volume control.

If the Audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the Audio system source is muted for the duration of the call.

## RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

When a pop-up screen appears with an incoming text message, touch the **Show** button.

A screen will appear with the following options:

- **Reply**: Touch to select a screen where a reply can be entered and sent.

  ***Note:*** *This option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.*
- **Template**: Touch to select a list of replies (e.g., **Yes**, **No**, **Thank you!**, **I'll be arriving a little late**, etc.) Select the required reply.
- **Read Out**: Touch for the message to be read out as an audio message.

## INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl™ uses Smartphone and in-vehicle mobile technology, to remotely connect your vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

InControl has 4 main features:

- InControl Remote.
- InControl Secure.
- InControl Wi-Fi.
- InControl Apps.

If InControl has not been pre-registered by your Dealer, or if you are not the first owner of the vehicle, you will need to visit: **www.landroverincontrol.com/owner** to create an account. Once your account has been created, follow the on-screen instructions to connect your account to your vehicle, and to activate Incontrol.

***Note:*** *100% mobile connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.*

***Note:*** *It is the owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from their InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.*

## INCONTROL REMOTE

InControl Remote comprises the following:

- A Remote Smartphone App.
- A breakdown call feature.
- An SOS Emergency call feature.

**Remote Smartphone App**

The Remote Smartphone App has a number of different features, including:

- A remote fuel level and range check.
- A vehicle locator, to help you find your vehicle in a busy car park.
- Check to see if you have left any windows or doors open.
- A journey details download feature, to assist if you need to claim business mileage expenses.

The InControl Remote Smartphone App can be downloaded for Apple's iPhone from the Apple App Store, or for Android phones, from Google Play.

**Breakdown call**

Located in the overhead console. See **290, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button will be illuminated by a white LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to call. Your location and the vehicle's details will automatically be provided to Land Rover Assistance.

When a call is initiated, the button will flash amber and will be constantly illuminated amber during the call.

Push the button cover back into place, after use.

**SOS Emergency call**


Located in the overhead console. See **290, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event that your personal safety or security is at risk, press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button will be illuminated by a red LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to call. Your location and the vehicle's details will automatically be provided to the emergency services.

When a call is initiated, the button will flash amber. The button will be constantly illuminated amber during a call.

Push the button cover back into place after use.

***Note:*** *In the event that any of the vehicle's airbags are deployed, or a crash is detected, an SOS Emergency call will be automatically triggered.*

***Note:*** *If you are travelling in a different country, a call will still connect, however, the vehicle's location and details may not be automatically sent.*

## INCONTROL SECURE

InControl Secure provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without your consent, you will be contacted by the InControl Secure Monitoring Centre. Alternatively, use the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or the phone number on the InControl website, to contact the InControl Secure Monitoring Centre.

When the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, InControl must be set to Service mode. This can be done by using the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or via the InControl website.

If the vehicle is being transported, InControl must be set to Transport mode. Again, this can be done by using the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or via the InControl website.

Failure to set Service mode or Transport mode could trigger a false theft alert.

***Note:*** *When set, Service or Transport mode should be updated every 10 hours, or more frequently, if required.*

***Note:*** *For further information, visit the InControl section of* ***www.landrover.com****.*

## INCONTROL WI-FI

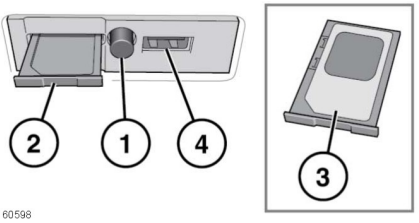
InControl Wi-Fi allows passengers to connect to the internet using a high speed 3G connection.

A SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card holder is located behind a cover on the left side of the loadspace.

The SIM card reader utilizes a 'Mini-SIM' interface. If your SIM card is a different size, for example, 'Micro-SIM', an adaptor or replacement SIM card will be required.

Your Wi-Fi Hotspot IMEI number can be accessed via the Wi-Fi hotspot router menu (see Wi-Fi settings below). Your mobile network provider may need this information in order to activate a SIM card.

***Note:*** *If your SIM card has previously been used in a mobile phone, or any other device, and a Personal Identification Number (PIN) has been set, remove the PIN before using the SIM card in the vehicle.*



E160598

To install a SIM card, press the button (**1**) to release the SIM card holder (**2**). Insert the SIM card into the holder, as indicated (**3**).

Fully close the SIM card holder.

***Note:*** *The USB port (**4**) is for Service use only.*

Make sure the SIM card is located correctly in the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the SIM card or SIM card reader.

**Wi-Fi settings**

InControl Wi-Fi can be turned on and off using the Touch screen. On the **Extra features** screen, select **WiFi Hotspot**. For more information, see **80, EXTRA FEATURES**.

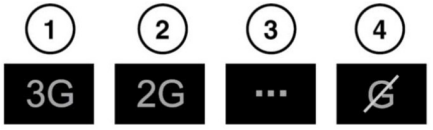
The **WiFi Hotspot** screen also allows you to adjust basic system settings. More advanced settings, including changing your security password and Access Point Name (APN) configuration, can be carried out by accessing the Wi-Fi hotspot router menu on your mobile device.

To access the Wi-Fi hotspot router menu:

- From the **WiFi Hotspot** screen, select **Help**.
- The Wi-Fi hotspot router address will be displayed on the Touch screen. Copy this address into your mobile device's Internet explorer browser.

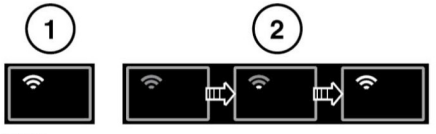
The Wi-Fi hotspot router menu will now be displayed on your mobile device. Log in using your InControl account details.

**Wi-Fi icons**




E154367

1. 3G mobile phone network connectivity.
2. 2G mobile phone network connectivity.
3. Connecting.
4. No mobile phone network connection.




E154365

1. Wi-Fi hotspot on.
2. Wi-Fi hotspot initialising.

## INCONTROL APPS

**In the interests of safety, operate, adjust or view the system only when it is safe to do so.**

**Do not adjust the Touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.**

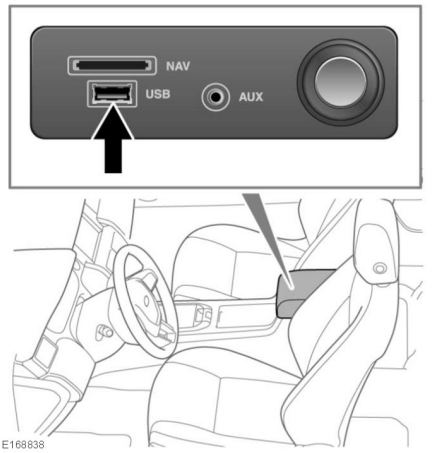
InControl™ Apps allows you to view and operate approved Smartphone apps through the vehicle's Touch screen.

Before using InControl Apps, you will need to download the InControl Apps Smartphone App. For Apple's iPhone®, this can be downloaded from the Apple App Store. For android phones, this can be downloaded from Google Play.

***Note:*** *Not all Smartphones are compatible with InControl Apps. Check the list of compatible Smartphones and supported apps in the Owners section of* ***www.landrover.com****.*

***Note:*** *To establish a connection to the vehicle, the Smartphone must be unlocked and connected to the USB port.*

***Note:*** *Make sure that all phone covers and cases are in the open position. Closed covers or cases may cause the phone to become locked and; therefore, prevent connection to InControl Apps.*




To initiate InControl Apps, connect your Smartphone, using your Smartphone's USB cable, to the USB port located in the centre cubby box.

***Note:*** *iPhone users: When prompted by the phone, you must give permission to allow the App to open.*

***Note:*** *Android phone users: When prompted by the phone, you can give permission to always allow the App to open.*

Once connected, select **InControl Apps** from the Touch screen's **HOME** menu. You can navigate to the InControl Apps feature on your vehicle and any compatible apps will be displayed on the vehicle's Touch screen. You can now open and operate these apps using the vehicle's Touch screen.

***Note:*** *If the ignition or the engine is switched off, the Bluetooth connection between the phone and the vehicle will be disconnected. To reconnect the phone to the vehicle via Bluetooth, see* ***161, PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE****.*

***Note:*** *Apple, iPhone, is a trademark of Apple Inc, registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

## THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the Touch screen and can be complemented by voice guidance, if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the SD card, to establish the true position of the vehicle.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The Touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens and map displays.

**Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.**

***Note:*** *The Navigation system fitted to your vehicle does not support speed camera alerts.*

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The Navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the Navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

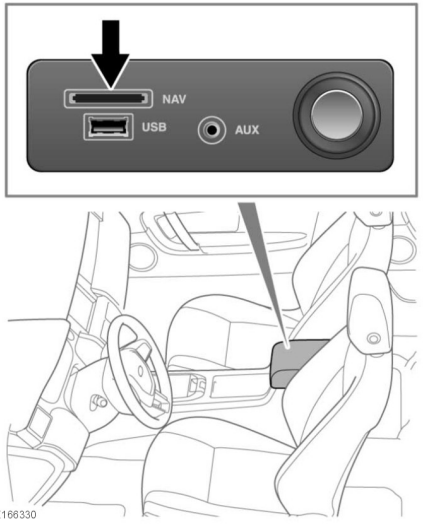
GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels and roads, under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the Navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on the screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on, or beneath, elevated roads.
- 2 roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle has been transported to another destination.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

## NAVIGATION SD CARD




The Navigation SD card reader is located in the front centre cubby box. Make sure the SD card is located correctly in the card reader before operating the Navigation system.

For updates to the Navigation system's maps, visit **www.landrover.com/map-updates/incontrol-touch/**, or contact your Land Rover Dealer.

***Note:*** *If for any reason the SD card is ejected while the Navigation system is in operation, the Navigation system will not operate until the vehicle's ignition is switched off and the vehicle is restarted.*

## USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

**In the interests of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

**The Navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving. It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely, and be in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. It is also the driver's responsibility to determine the safety of the route suggested by the Navigation system. The Navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.**

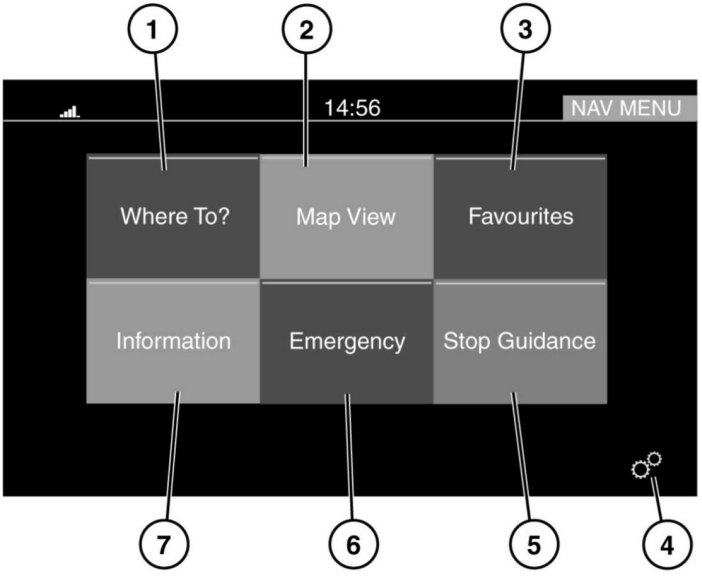
**Do not allow the system to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.**

To access the Navigation system, press the Navigation button or touch the **Navigation** area on the **HOME** screen.

This will show the current vehicle position. Touch the **Nav menu** soft key to display the **NAV MENU** screen.

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **Nav set-up** area. These settings are applied, whenever the Navigation system is used.

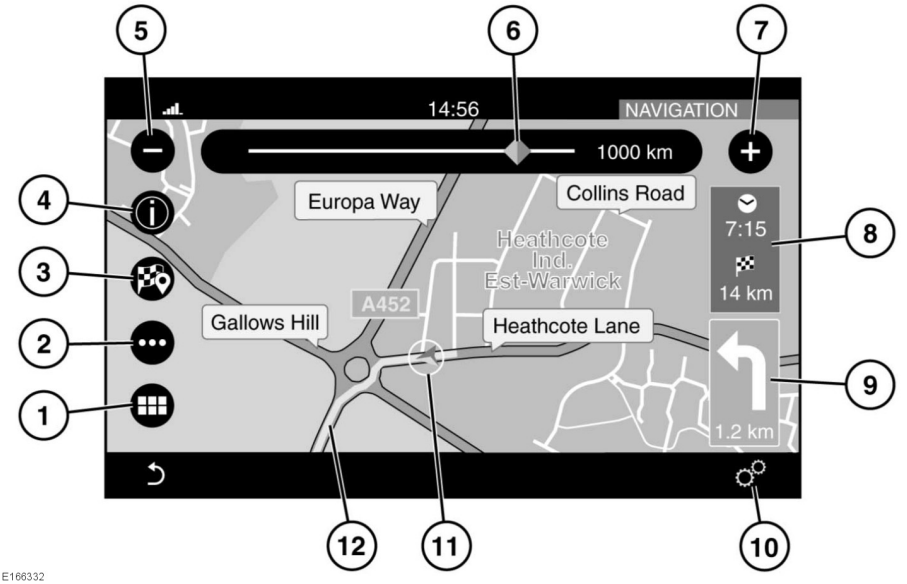
## MAIN MENU




E166331

1. **Where To?**: Touch for a list of options for setting a destination. See **173, WHERE TO?**.
2. **Map View**: Touch to view the map screen.
3. **Favourites**: Touch to view the list of stored destinations.
4. **Settings**: Touch to view the **General settings** or **Navigation** menu. See **172, SETTINGS**.
5. **Stop Guidance**: Touch to cancel the current route guidance.
6. **Emergency**: Touch to see a list of emergency services. See **174, EMERGENCY**.
7. **Information**: Touch to display the following: **Traffic**, **Where am I**, and **Trip computer**.

## MAP SCREEN




1. Touch to select the **NAV MENU**.
2. Touch to select the **Route** menu.
3. Touch to set a selected destination.
4. Touch to show information for a Point of Interest (POI), or for traffic information.
5. Touch to reduce the map size.
6. Drag the indicator along the scale to enlarge or reduce the map size, or touch the line for the position required.
7. Touch to enlarge the map size.
8. Touch to change between estimated time to destination and distance to destination.
9. Next manoeuvre icon and the distance to the next manoeuvre. Touch to hear voice guidance for the next manoeuvre.
10. Touch to view the **General settings** or **Navigation** menu. See **172, SETTINGS**.
11. Indicates the vehicle's position on the set route.
12. The route that has been set.

## SETTINGS

Touch the Settings icon on the **NAV MENU** screen, or on the map screen, to view the following options:

- **Speed limit warning**.

  ***Note:*** *When the Speed limit warning feature is in operation, it will only register the official speed limit for the road; it will not register any temporary speed limits (e.g., speed limits for: road works, congestion, fog, etc.). Also, speed limits shown are only accurate up to the last map update.*

- **Guidance**. See **173, SETTINGS - GUIDANCE**.

- **POI list sorting**.
- **GPS**: Select to set the coordinate format.
- **Map Display Mode**: Select to set **Day**, **Night**, or **Automatic** as an option.
- **Map View**: Select **2D** or **3D**.
- **Orientation**.
- **Current Street**.
- **Auto Zoom**.
- **Show POI Icons**.
- **POI icon list** (only available when **Show POI Icons** is selected).
- **TMC Incidents**.
- **Speed and Flow**.
- **3D City Models**.
- **3D Landmarks**.
- **Digital Terrain Model**.
- **Park Areas**.
- **Railroads**.
- **City Areas**.
- **River Names**.
- **System Information**.

## SETTINGS - GUIDANCE

Touch the **Guidance** option on the **Settings** menu, to view the following options:

- **Play Voice Guidance Prompts**.
- **Lane Recommendation**.
- **Junction View**.
- **TMC Route Mode**.
- **TMC Avoidance Types**: Select to turn the following **ON**/**OFF**:
  - **Accidents**.
  - **Closures**.
  - **Traffic flow**.
  - **Lane Restrictions**.
  - **Others**.
- **Avoid** (only available when under guidance).

## WHERE TO?

To set route guidance, select **Where To?** on the **NAV MENU** to view the following options:

- **Address**: Touch to view the following options:
  - **Spell City**.
  - **Enter Post Code**.
  - **Enter Country**.
- **Recent**: Select to view a list of recent destinations; touch the required destination from the list.
- **Point of interest** (POI): Select to view the POI list of locations and public places.
- **Favourites**: Select to view a list favourite destinations.
- **Go Home**: Select to enter the destination as a home address, or to select a preset home address destination.
- **Intersection**: Select and enter the area required (**City**, **Town**, etc.) followed by 2 street names, to find an Intersection destination.
- **GEO Coordinate**: Select to enter a known GEO Coordinate as a destination.
  A GEO Coordinate can be obtained from a handheld GPS receiver, a map, or the Navigation system.
- **Point on Map**: Use to select a destination directly from the map screen. By selecting a street segment or icon, you can quickly enter a destination without the need to input the city name or street.
- **City Centre**: Select to enter the name of a city. The Navigation system will calculate a route to the centre of the City entered.

- **Closest Cities**: Select to view a list of the Closest cities.
- **Phone Number**: Select and enter a known phone number as a destination.

## POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

To set a destination from the selection of POIs: In **Where To?**, touch **Point of Interest** to view the following list:

- **All Categories**.
- **Gas Stations**.
- **Restaurants**.
- **Hotels**.
- **ATM / banking**.
- **Spell name**.

The POI search area selection can also be changed by selecting the **Change Search Area** soft key; the following options are listed:

- **Around Me**.
- **Near Destination** (this is only available during a route guidance).
- **In a City**.
- **Along Route** (this is only available during a route guidance).

When the required POI has been found, touch to select it as a destination.

## EMERGENCY

On the **NAV MENU** screen, select **Emergency** to see the following list of emergency options:

- **Hospital**: Search and route to a hospital close to your current location.
- **Police**: Search and route to a police station close to your current location.
- **Location**: Select to show details of your current location.
- **Save**: Select to save your location as a favourite.

To search for any of the emergency services listed above:

1. Select the emergency service required.
2. Use one of the following categories to find the emergency service:
   - **Name**.
   - **Distance**.
3. Select the required emergency service from the list and touch **Yes** to confirm the destination.
4. If you are already on a route guidance, the system will ask you to select one of the following:
   - **Cancel previous route**.
   - **Add as first destination**.
   - **Add as last destination**.

## TO SET A SELECTED DESTINATION

Once a destination has been selected, there are 4 options:

- **Yes**: Select to accept the selected destination and start guidance.
- **Options**: When calculating a route, various options can be selected.
  Before accepting the requested route, touch **Options** to view the following list of the options:
  - **Fast**.
  - **Short**.
  - **Economical**.
  - **Route Alternative**.
  - **Round Trip**.

  Select the required option from the list.
- **Avoid**: When calculating a route, a road type to avoid can be set.
  Before accepting the requested route, touch **Avoid** to view a list of options to avoid.
  Select the required option from the list.

- **Save**: When calculating a route, the destination can be saved as a favourite. Before accepting the requested route, touch **Save** to save the route to your Favourites.

## SOFT KEY ICONS

Touch this icon to edit text or delete the text from the list.

Touch this icon to change the order of text in a list. Use the up and down arrows to move the text to the required position. Touch the icon again to register the new position.

## NAVIGATION TERMS AND CONDITIONS

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC ("Jaguar Land Rover") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. © 2014 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information. ©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

**Terms and Conditions**

- **Personal Use Only**: You agree to use this Data together with the provided Jaguar Land Rover navigation system for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.
- **Restrictions**: Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Jaguar Land Rover, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.**

- **No Warranty**: This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Jaguar Land Rover and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.
- **Disclaimer of Warranty**: Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

- **Disclaimer of Liability**: Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.
- **Export Control**: Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.
- **Entire Agreement**: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.
- **Governing Law**: The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the Netherlands, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the Netherlands for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

- **Government End Users**: If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

**Notice of use**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:

c/o Nokia 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.



If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

**Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition, as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.**

**Switch off the engine when refuelling.**

**Switch off any personal electronic devices, such as mobile phones or music players, when refuelling.**

## PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228 (or the national equivalent).

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes (e.g., manganese-based), or fuel additives, as these may adversely affect the emissions control systems, and may affect warranty coverage.

Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by Land Rover.

## OCTANE RATING

Jaguar Land Rover Limited requires the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON, to contribute to optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, you may use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON , but this may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause audible engine knock and other driveability problems.

Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON as severe engine damage may occur.

***Note:*** *Occasional, light, engine knock, experienced while accelerating or climbing hills, is acceptable.*

If a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even when using fuel to the recommended octane rating, or if you hear engine knock while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the problem corrected. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which Jaguar Land Rover is not responsible.

If in doubt, seek advice from a Dealer/Authorised Repairer in the territory concerned.

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel (where available) may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

## ETHANOL

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (E5 and E10) may be used.

This vehicle is not suitable for fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.

Do not use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content), as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers will not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

## METHANOL

Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered under warranty.

## METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used, provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

## DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use only high quality diesel fuel, according to EN590 or equivalent.

Land Rover vehicles are capable of running with up to a 7% blend of bio-diesel, in accordance with European Standard EN590. Jaguar Land Rover Limited does not recommend use of a higher blend of bio-diesel.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Jaguar Land Rover strongly recommends the use of premium, or highest quality available, fuel.

High quality fuel promotes a longer life for your engine components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to engine components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

If you inadvertently fill your vehicle with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

Jaguar Land Rover can accept no responsibility for any damage caused by running your vehicle with fuel other than those stipulated.

## SULPHUR CONTENT

If your vehicle is equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) After treatment system, the maximum sulphur content of the fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million), in accordance with EN590-EU4, or World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) Cat 3.

The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in Land Rover vehicles not fitted with a DPF, should not exceed 0.3% (3 000 parts per million).

In some countries, diesel fuel will contain higher levels of sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on engine and After treatment components. If in doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

Using an incorrect specification of fuel will cause serious damage to the engine and/or After treatment system, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. If in doubt, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel.

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres (1 gallon) will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refuelling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle will need to be driven 1.5-5 km (1-3 miles), in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

***Note:*** *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

## FUEL FILLER FLAP

**Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap.**

The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear.

1. If a locking fuel filler flap is fitted, make sure the vehicle's alarm system is disarmed.

   ***Note:*** *The fuel filler flap can be opened only when the vehicle's alarm is disarmed.*

2. Press the flap to unlatch it. Open the flap until the hinge lock fully engages.
   After refuelling, tighten the cap until it clicks 3 times.
3. To close the filler flap, push the flap until latched closed.

***Note:*** *The filler flap will only be locked closed when the vehicle is centrally locked.*

## FUEL FILLER

**When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.**

**Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.**

**Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire/explosion.**

Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.

If the vehicle is filled with incorrect fuel, it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

***Note:*** *Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles, deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage; therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.*

## DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

**When the misfuelling device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.**

***Note:*** *It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The diesel misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with the incorrect fuel.*

Diesel engine vehicles, in some markets, are equipped with a misfuelling protection device, incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

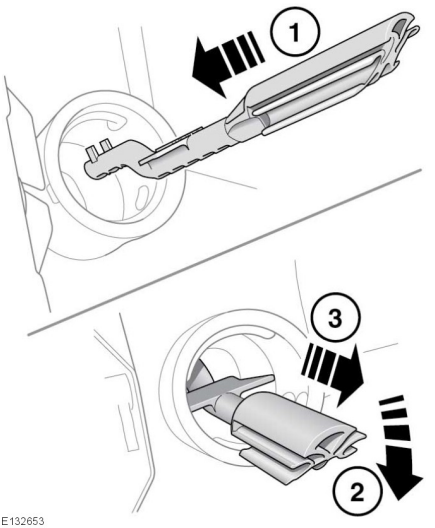
If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the misfuel protection device will activate.

***Note:*** *The diesel misfuelling protection device may not activate if an unleaded petrol nozzle is only partially inserted.*

***Note:*** *The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling device.*

When activated, the yellow misfuel protector will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue with the correct fuel, the device will need to be reset.

The reset tool is located under the loadspace floor.




Reset the misfuel protection device as follows:

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth by pushing down on the top of the reset tool.
3. With the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.

Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

***Note:*** *The yellow part of the protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.*

Return the reset tool to the loadspace.

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, you may not be able to add the fuel quantity, as there will be a small reserve remaining in the tank. See **250, CAPACITIES**.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures, shown below, have been calculated using a standard testing procedure (the new EC test procedure from Directive 99/100/EC), and produced in accordance with The Passenger Car Fuel Consumption (Amendment) Order 1996.

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure, depending on driving technique, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, vehicle load and condition.

| Variant | Urban L/100 km (mpg) | Extra-urban L/100 km (mpg) | Combined L/100 km (mpg) | CO2 emissions combined g/km |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Diesel, 150 PS** | | | | |
| Manual, 5 seats | 6.90 (40.9)* | 5.00 (56.5)* | 5.69 (49.6)* | 149 |
| Automatic, 5 seats | 7.20 (39.2)* | 5.30 (53.3)* | 5.99 (47.1)* | 154 |
| Manual, 7 seats | 6.90 (40.9)* | 5.20 (54.3)* | 5.80 (48.7)* | 159 |
| Automatic, 7 seats | 7.47 (37.8)* | 5.48 (51.5)* | 6.20 (45.5)* | 164 |
| **Diesel, 190 PS** | | | | |
| Manual, 5 seats | 7.2 (39.2) | 5.4 (52.3) | 6.1 (46.3) | 159 |
| Automatic, 5 seats | 7.1 (39.8) | 5.5 (51.4) | 6.1 (46.3) | 162 |
| Manual, 7 seats | 7.0 (40.4) | 5.6 (50.4) | 6.1 (46.3) | 161 |
| Automatic, 7 seats | 7.4 (38.2) | 5.7 (49.6) | 6.3 (44.8) | 166 |
| **Petrol, GTDi** | | | | |
| 5 seat | 10.6 (26.7) | 6.5 (43.5) | 8.0 (35.3) | 191 |
| 7 seat | 10.9 (25.9) | 6.8 (41.5) | 8.3 (34.0) | 197 |

*Estimated figures.

## URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph) with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

## EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises steady speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km (4.3 miles).

## COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.

For additional information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at:
**http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/**

## RUNNING-IN

This vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in relative to one another. The process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km (2 000 miles) of operation. These guidelines should be followed during this running-in period to obtain optimum performance.

- Avoid frequent cold starts, followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer trips.
- Do not use full throttle during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed, and abrupt stops.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools or similar.
- Do not operate the vehicle at higher engine speeds, until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.

## SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval will be notified to the driver via the Service interval indicator in the Message centre. If the distance or time are exceeded, the display will show a negative value (-) to indicate that a service is overdue. See **48, INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

## OWNER MAINTENANCE

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

## DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning lamps.
- Operation of the seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air conditioning are normal.

## WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake/clutch fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air conditioning.

***Note:*** *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

## ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 50ºC.
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40ºC.
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.

- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

Diesel vehicles equipped with a particle filter have more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving.

When a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by an amber warning lamp, the filter requires a regeneration cycle to clean itself. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration takes place automatically at an interval of approximately 300-900 km (190-560 miles) depending on driving conditions. Regeneration normally takes 10-20 minutes and is automatically requested by the engine control module if the vehicle is driven steadily at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h to 112 km/h (40 mph to 70 mph). It is possible that the regeneration process will occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the events may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

***Note:*** *If regeneration is not successfully carried out, the amber warning lamp will eventually be replaced by a red warning lamp.*

***Note:*** *If diesel fuel with a high sulphur content is used regularly, when a DPF regeneration cycle starts the exhaust will emit a cloud of smoke. This is the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, use only low sulphur diesel fuel.*

If a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by a red warning lamp, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

## DRIVING SHORT DISTANCES OR IN COLD WEATHER

If the vehicle is frequently driven short distances, or in cold weather conditions, then the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) does not take place and the filter is not efficiently cleaned. When the filter reaches a condition when a filter regeneration is appropriate and the current drive style is not appropriate, a warning triangle in the Instrument panel illuminates and the message **DPF Full. See manual** is displayed in the Message centre. This is not indicating a fault condition with the vehicle and no dealership support should be required. Start regeneration of the filter by driving the vehicle, preferably on a main road or motorway. The vehicle should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes or more.

When regeneration is complete, the warning text is cleared automatically.

***Note:*** *A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during regeneration.*

## ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

⚠ **No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.**

## AIRBAG SYSTEM

⚠ **The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.**

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system always consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, 2-way radio or in-car entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

## PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

**The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle warranty.**

**Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury or damage to property which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to Land Rover vehicles.**

**All replacement parts for the air conditioning system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment while complying with the SAE Standards. Contact a Dealer/Authorized Repairer for advice.**

This symbol may be used on an under bonnet label and is relevant to the air conditioning refrigerant fluid. The symbol identifies extremely flammable chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire in contact with air.

## ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

It is essential that any dynamometer testing is carried out only by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by Dealers/Authorised Repairers.

## SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

**If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.**

**Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area - exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.**

**Never work or allow any person to place any part of their body beneath a vehicle supported by a jack.**

**Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped. They may also start to operate after the engine is turned off and continue operating for up to 10 minutes.**

**Remove metal wristbands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.**

**Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch (ignition) turned on.**

**Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.**

## POISONOUS FLUIDS

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds.

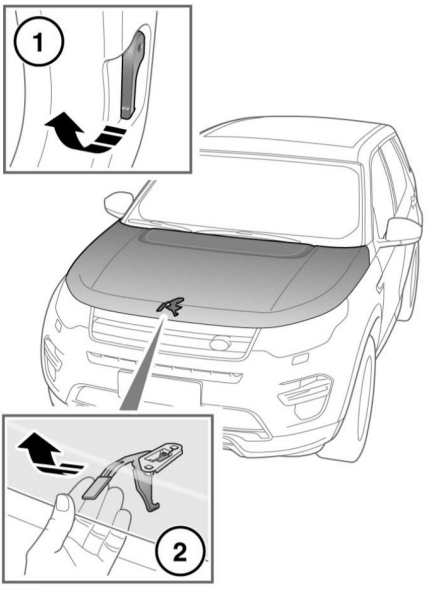
For your own safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

## USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses or soil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

## OPENING THE BONNET




E163454

1. Pull the bonnet release lever, located in the left-side front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch, located below the centre point of the bonnet, then raise the bonnet.

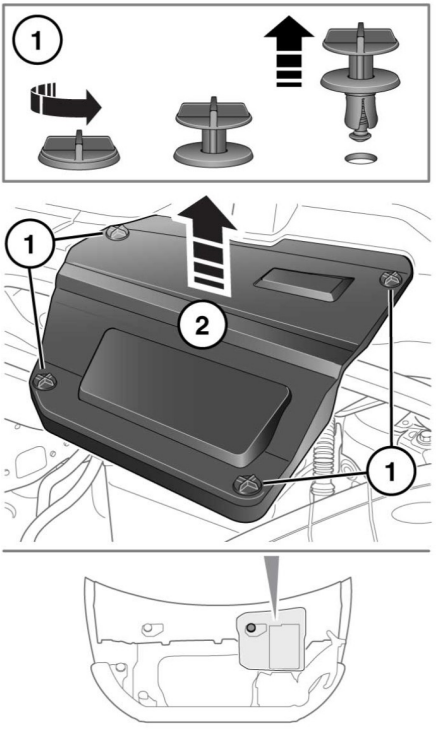
## CLOSING THE BONNET

**Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.**

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages.
2. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click.
3. Check that both catches are engaged by trying to lift the front edge of the bonnet.

## UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL

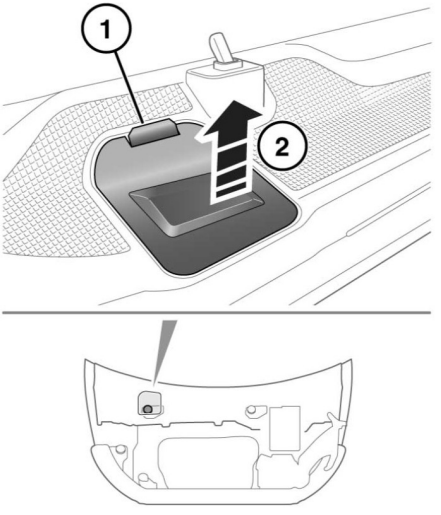
### Left-side under bonnet cover




E165372

1. Unscrew the turnbuckles clips counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Lift the front edge of the cover and slide it forwards to remove.

### Right-side under bonnet cover




E165373

1. Pull the cover securing catch towards the front of the vehicle, to release.
2. While still holding the cover securing catch, lift up the edge of the cover to remove.

## UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING

### Left-side under bonnet cover

Before refitting the under bonnet cover, make sure no pipes, cables or other items, have been trapped between the cover and the casing.

1. Place the under bonnet cover over the casing, making sure that all of the holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly and screw the turnbuckle clips clockwise to tighten.

**Right-side under bonnet cover**

1. Place the 2 locating lugs at the rear edge of the cover into the surrounding panel.
2. Press the cover down to engage the cover securing catch.

## FUEL SYSTEM

**Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or renewed by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.**

**Make sure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.**

**Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.**

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Land Rover vehicles are fitted with emission and evaporative control systems. In many countries it is unlawful to tamper, modify or renew such equipment and legal penalties apply if the laws are flouted.

Dealers/Authorised Repairers are properly equipped to perform repairs and to maintain these systems.

**Exhaust fumes contain poisonous substances which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.**

- Do not inhale exhaust gases.
- Do not start or leave the engine running in an enclosed unventilated area.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- Do not modify the exhaust system.
- Exhaust leaks should be repaired immediately.
- If exhaust fumes are thought to be entering the vehicle, have it investigated immediately.

***Note:*** *Running out of fuel can result in a misfire. This can cause damage to the emission control system.*

## CHANGING A BULB

**If the lighting has just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool. Handling them when hot may cause personal injury.**

Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice. See **254, BULB SPECIFICATION**.

Before attempting a bulb change, make sure the ignition and affected lamp are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Not all bulbs are renewable. The following bulbs can be renewed:

- Halogen headlamps.
- Direction indicators.
- Reversing lamps.

All other exterior lamps and some interior lamps are either LED (Light Emitting Diode) or Xenon units and can only be renewed by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

All replacement procedures require the removal of components to gain access to the bulbs.

Moving a headlamp unit should be undertaken only by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

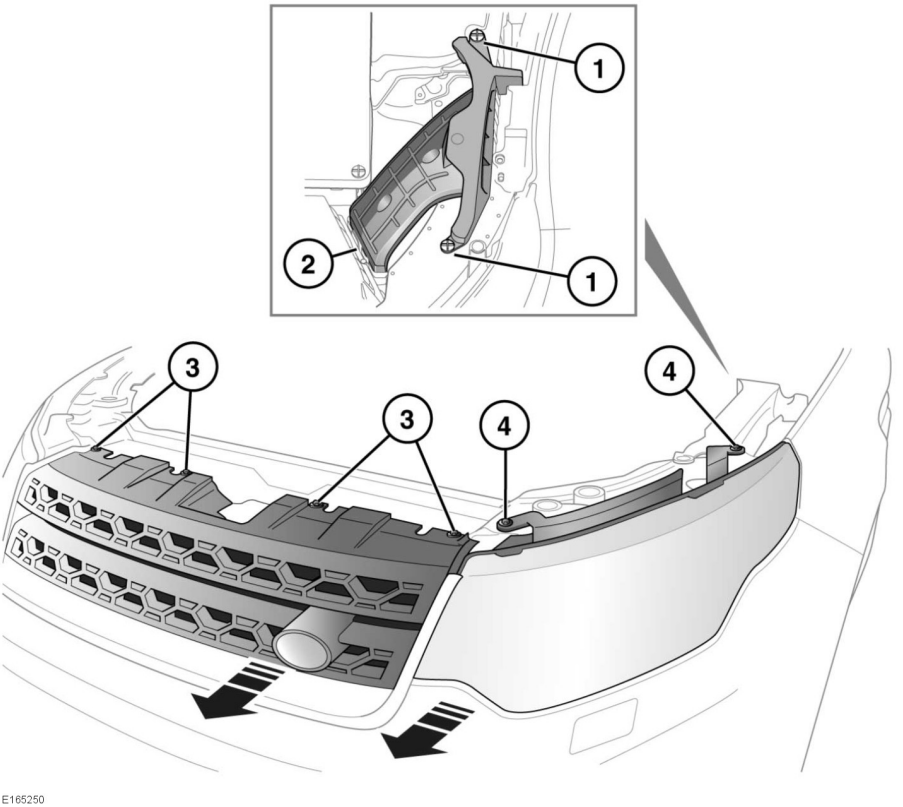
***Note:*** *To change any bulb in a headlamp unit, a cross head screwdriver and a 10 mm spanner is required.*

## XENON LAMPS

**High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapour which are used to power Xenon lamps. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury. Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.**

**Xenon lamp units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure the lamp units have cooled before attempting to touch them.**

## HEADLAMP REMOVAL

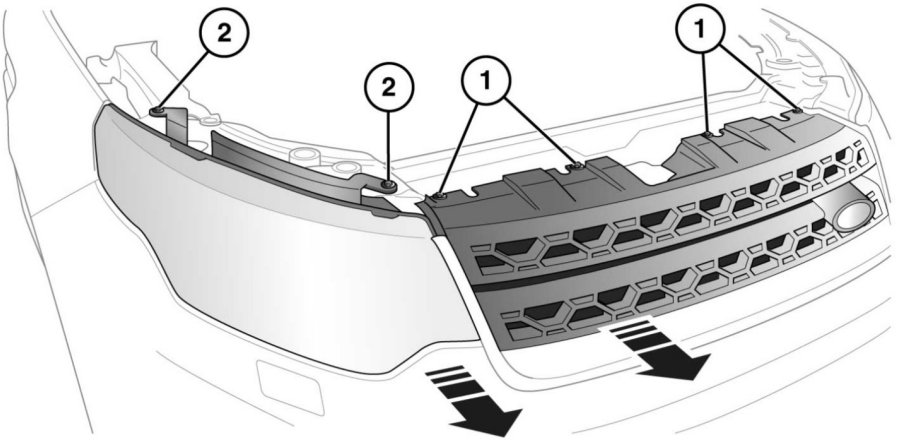



E165250

Moving the left headlamp unit to access the bulbs:

1. Remove the 2 plastic fixings.
2. Pull the tube up, to release it from the air box. This will allow more room for manoeuvrability.
3. Remove the 4 grille fixings.
4. Remove the 2 retaining bolts.

The headlamp unit can be withdrawn by 45 mm (1.8 inches).



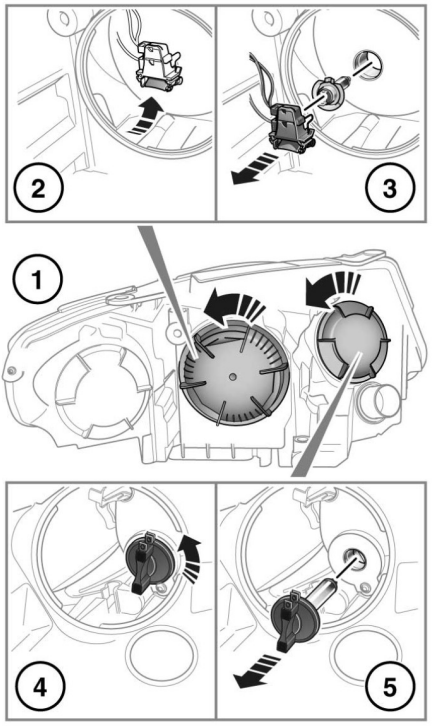

E165251

Moving the right headlamp unit to access the bulbs:

1. Remove the 4 grille fixings.
2. Remove the 2 retaining bolts.

The headlamp unit can be withdrawn by 45 mm (1.8 inches).

## HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



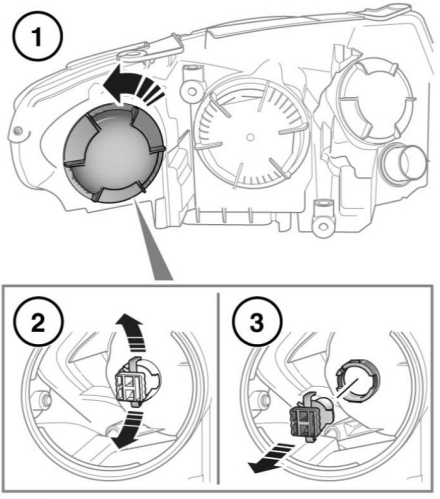

E165252

1. At the back of the headlamp unit, rotate the appropriate bulb cover counter-clockwise and then lightly pull to remove it.
2. Remove the low beam bulb holder from the headlamp.
3. Unclip the low beam bulb and remove it from the bulb holder.
4. Rotate the DRL/high beam bulb unit counter-clockwise.
5. Remove the DRL/high beam bulb unit from the headlamp housing.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a bulb holder/bulb unit.

***Note:*** *Note the orientation of any removed components to aid refitting.*

## DIRECTION INDICATOR BULB REPLACEMENT




E165254

To gain more room for accessibility, follow the process for removing the headlamp unit. See **192, HEADLAMP REMOVAL**.

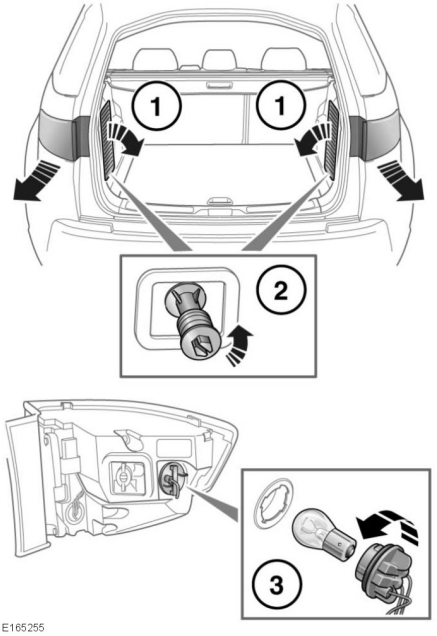
1. At the back of the headlamp unit, rotate the appropriate bulb cover counter-clockwise and then lightly pull to remove it.
2. Release the sides of the bulb holder.
3. Pull the holder to remove it from the headlamp and access the indicator bulb.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a bulb holder/bulb unit.

***Note:*** *For Xenon headlamp units, the bulb cover for the direction indicator is located on the inboard side.*

***Note:*** *Note the orientation of any removed components to aid refitting.*

## REAR DIRECTION INDICATOR AND REVERSING LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



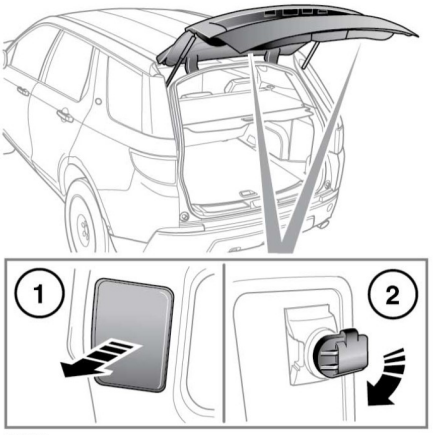

E165255

Replacing a rear direction indicator:

1. Remove the appropriate loadspace vent door.
2. Rotate the rear lamp's retaining screw counter-clockwise, until fully released and then remove. This allows the rear lamp unit to be withdrawn.
3. At the back of the rear lamp unit, rotate the bulb holder counter-clockwise and pull to access the indicator bulb.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a bulb holder/bulb unit.

***Note:*** *Note the orientation of any removed components to aid refitting.*




E165256

Replacing a reversing lamp bulb:

1. Remove the appropriate tailgate access door.
2. Rotate the bulb holder downwards. Pull to remove the holder from the lamp unit and access the reversing bulb.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a bulb holder/bulb unit.

***Note:*** *Note the orientation of any removed components to aid refitting.*

## WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

When replacing the wiper blades make sure the wiper arms do not make contact with the windscreen.

Before changing a front wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows:

***Note:*** *The Smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are being renewed.*

1. Make sure the ignition is turned off.

2. Turn the ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately push the wiper control down to start the single wipe operation and turn the ignition on again.
   The wipers will move to their service position.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, turn the ignition off. This will return the wipers to the park position.

## WINDOW RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted, the windows must be reset.

Once the power supply is restored, reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

## THE EXTERIOR

**Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.**

Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose, before washing the vehicle.

Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate suspension joints, door/window seals and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at any cameras, the engine air intakes, heater air intakes, body seals (doors, sunroof, windows etc.), or at any components which may be damaged (lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters, etc.). Make sure the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 300 mm (12 ins) from any component of the vehicle.

When lifting the wiper blades for cleaning, use the Winter park position to avoid damage to the vehicle. See **66, WINTER PARK POSITION**.

Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area.

Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.

Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

Use only cleaning products approved for use on vehicles.

Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of bumper mouldings. It will become ingrained in the textured finish.

## SENSORS AND CAMERAS

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Park assist and Parking aid sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

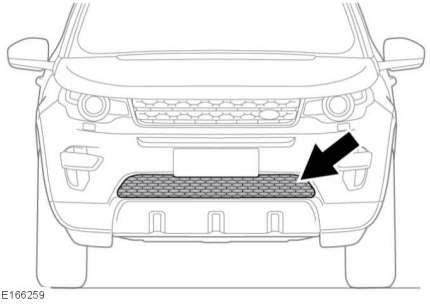
## UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the under body with plain water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

## AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING

Make sure the vehicle's underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.


E166259

Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

## ALLOY WHEELS

Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

## GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protective coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

## REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

## THE INTERIOR

**Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly, and may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.**

## FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.

Dynamica suede fabric should be cleaned regularly. Do not rub vigorously and do not use a steam machine. Dusting with a soft brush, a dry cloth or vacuum cleaner will be sufficient.

Do not use printed absorbent cloths or paper as they may transfer colour to the fabric.

## LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

Use only cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use solvents. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of products which are not approved will invalidate your warranty.

If you are in any doubt as to which products to use, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Leather should be cleaned and protected using Land Rover approved leather cleaner.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months, as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover approved leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean, soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Land Rover approved leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protection film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects, such as belts, zipper fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.
- Do not use a cleaning product that is not specifically for use in a vehicle. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty.

If a valet service is used, make sure the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

***Note:*** *Some materials/fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.*

## SEAT BELTS

**Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.**

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended.

***Note:*** *While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

## AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

**Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.**

**Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.**

## CARPET AND MATS

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL, TOUCH SCREEN AND AUDIO SYSTEM

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.

When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

- Clean with a lightly moistened cloth.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.

- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only 1 finger at a time is in contact with the Touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

## BLOCKED WASHER JETS

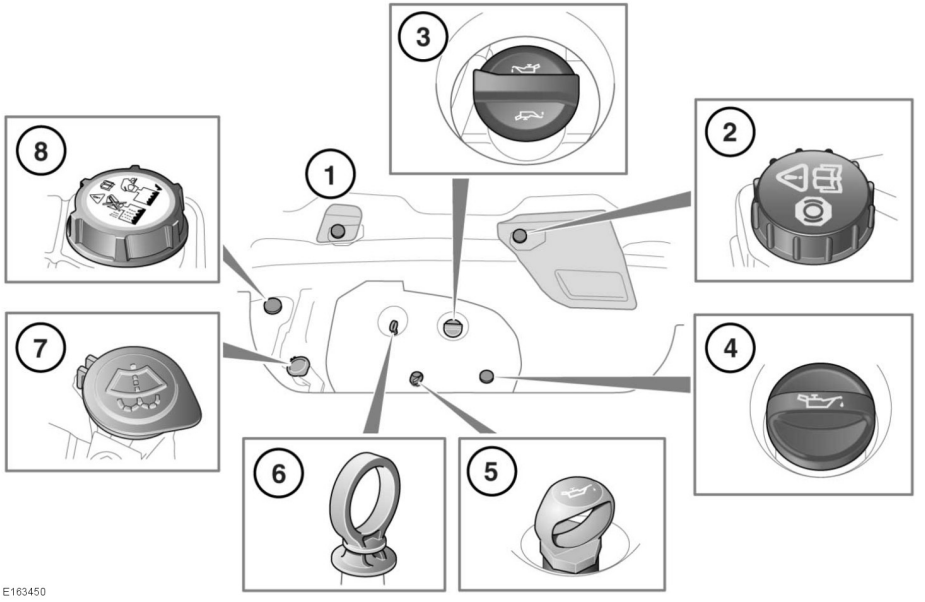
⚠ **Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.**

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

## FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS




1. Brake fluid reservoir cap (right-hand drive). Remove the right-side under bonnet cover for access. See **189, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap (left-hand drive). Remove the left-side under bonnet cover for access. See **189, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
3. Engine oil filler cap (petrol engine).
4. Engine oil filler cap (diesel engine).
5. Oil level dipstick (diesel engine).
6. Oil level dipstick (petrol engine).
7. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
8. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.

**While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See 187, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE.**

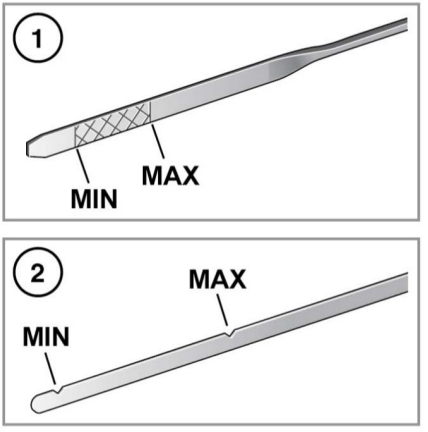
**Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if there is a possibility that any leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust. Seek qualified assistance immediately.**

## CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.

If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.




E150369

1. Engine oil dipstick - 2.0L petrol engine.
2. Engine oil dipstick - 2.2L diesel engine.

Prior to checking the oil level make sure that:

- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

***Note:*** *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

As a general guide, if the oil level on the dipstick:

1. Is nearer to the upper mark or notch than the lower, do not add oil.
2. Is nearer to the lower mark or notch than the upper, add 0.5 litre (1 pint) of oil.
3. Is below the lower mark or notch, add for the diesel engine, 1.5 litres (2.6 pints) of oil and for the petrol engine, 0.8 litre (1.4 pints) of oil. Recheck the level after a further 5 minutes.

## TOPPING UP THE OIL

Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

1. Remove the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick.

It is essential to use the correct specification oil and to make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

***Note:*** *The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** on the petrol engine dipstick is 0.85 litres (1.5 pints) and on the diesel engine dipstick is 1.5 litres (2.6 pints).*

3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.

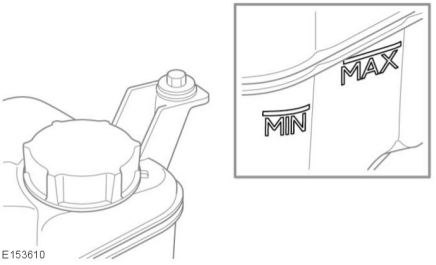
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
5. Refit the oil filler cap.

## CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.

If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.




Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.

## TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

**Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.**

**Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.**

**Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine) - a fire may result.**

**Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine cooling system and; therefore, engine durability.

Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% ± 5% all year round (not just in cold conditions). To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are retained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year and completely renewed every ten years, regardless of the distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C (68°F) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C (-40°F).

1. Remove the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating counter-clockwise.

2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

   ***Note:*** *In an emergency - and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable - top up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*

3. Refit the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks.

## CHECKING THE BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

⚠ **Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.**

⚠ **Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

⚠ **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.**

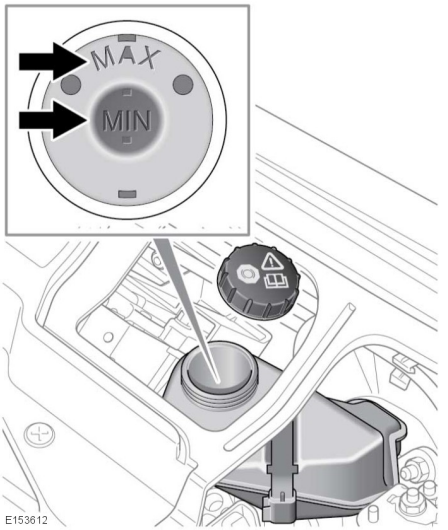
⚠ **Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine).**

⚠ **Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.**

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See **53, BRAKE (RED)**.

***Note:*** *If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits by gently applying the brakes. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.*

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).




1. Remove the relevant under bonnet cover. See **201, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **189, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**.
2. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
3. Remove the reservoir filler cap by rotating counter-clockwise.
4. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

***Note:*** *The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the* ***MIN*** *mark.*

## TOPPING UP THE BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

- Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **248, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
- Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.
- Only use new fluid from an airtight container (fluid from open containers or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must not be used).
- Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been renewed. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

1. Top up the brake fluid reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
2. Refit the brake fluid reservoir filler cap by rotating clockwise.
3. Refit the under bonnet cover. See **189, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING**.

## CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

- **Do not allow the screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.**
- **If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection.**
- Only use approved washer fluid.
- Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the front and rear screen washer jets and the headlamp washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

## TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

Top up the washer fluid as follows:

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

## BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS

Do not allow naked flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.

Make sure when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.

To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.

Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.

The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.

Consult the handbook for information, before handling the battery.

## BATTERY CARE

**If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothes you should remove the affected clothing and flush the skin/eyes with large amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately.**

**If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal, seek medical assistance immediately.**

**Do not connect any 12 volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.**

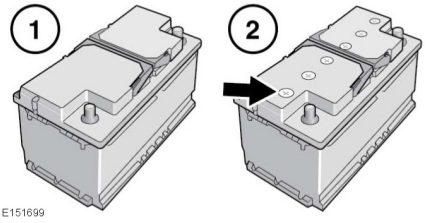
**The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.**

**Do not expose the battery to a naked flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.**

**Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.**

**Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery, and never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks, and/or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.**

**Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.**




Your vehicle is fitted with either an Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) (**1**) battery or a low maintenance (**2**) battery.

***Note:*** *AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.*

Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

In hot climates more frequent checks of the low maintenance battery electrolyte level and condition are required. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to have the battery checked.

## CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

**Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.**

**Before attempting to start the disabled vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park is selected or the manual gearbox is in neutral.**

**Always wear appropriate eye protection when working with batteries.**

**Never jump start, charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.**

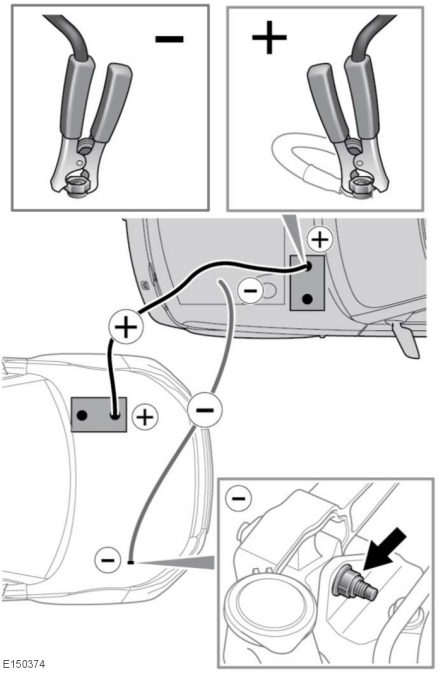
**During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury - keep sparks and naked lights away from the engine compartment.**

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles other than the jump leads.

Make sure that the slave battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.

Disconnect the jump leads prior to operating any electrical equipment.

***Note:*** *Before connecting jump leads make sure the battery connections on the disabled vehicle are correct and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.*




1. Connect the positive (Red) jump lead to the recommended positive (**+**) boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

   ***Note:*** *Refer to the donor vehicle's handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.*

2. Connect the other end of the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive (**+**) terminal on the discharged battery.
3. Connect the negative (Black) jump lead to the recommended negative (**-**) boost terminal of the donor vehicle.

***Note:*** *Refer to the donor vehicle's handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.*

4. Connect the other end of the negative (Black) jump lead to the earth point on the disabled vehicle (as illustrated).

   ***Note:*** *Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all 4 connections are secure.*

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

   ***Note:*** *Do not switch on any electrical circuits of the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.*

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the previously discharged battery.
12. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

## CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given:

1. Connect the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the negative (Black) jump lead to the vehicle's earth point.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.

## REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Special tools are required to refit the battery after removal, therefore battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Battery disconnection, removal and renewal should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

## REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Battery disconnection, removal and renewal should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

## EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power prior to disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state, when the battery was disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the Smart key in the normal way to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

## BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system will begin to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

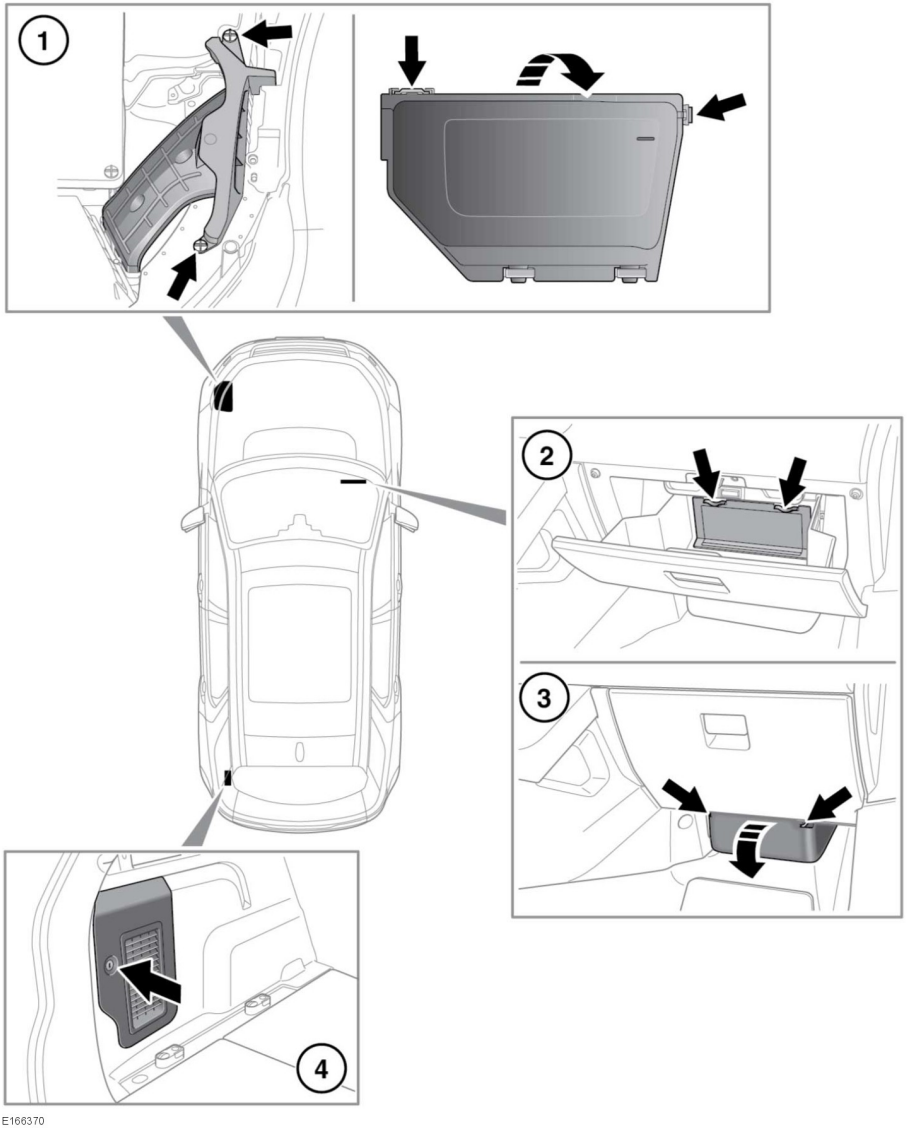
If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are 2 levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the Touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the Message centre.

- **Energy Management**: Will be displayed on the Touch screen if the engine is not running, and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes the IPSM will begin shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine**: Will be displayed on the Touch screen and in the Message centre if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM will begin shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.

Only start the engine, if it is safe to do so.

***Note:*** *If the message* ***Low Battery - Please Start Engine*** *is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C (32°F), or at least 60 minutes if temperatures are below 0°C (32°F). This will allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS




E166370

When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture, and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

Access can be gained to the fuses, as follows:

1. Engine compartment fuse box.
   - To gain access to the fuse box: Remove the 2 plastic fixings (see illustration) and pull the tube up to release it from the air box.
   - Unlatch the tabs (arrowed) to release the fuse box cover.

     The engine compartment fuse numbers and positions are shown on the inside of the fuse box cover.
2. Passenger compartment fuse box (upper): Open the glovebox and remove the panel from the glovebox liner. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
3. Passenger compartment fuse box (lower): Remove the lower access panel.
4. Luggage compartment (loadspace) fuse boxes: Rotate the latch and remove the panel from the left side trim of the luggage compartment. A label on the panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.

## CHANGING A FUSE

Always turn off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.

Fit Land Rover approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse, may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

***Note:*** *Land Rover recommend that relays should only be renewed by qualified persons.*

The fuse removal tweezers are located in the passenger compartment fuse box. Press the tweezers onto the head of a fuse and pull to remove. A break in the wire inside the fuse indicates that the fuse has blown and must be renewed.

There are some spare replacement fuses in the passenger compartment fuse box. See the fuse box label for details.

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 5 | Tan | Starter motor sensor |
| 2 | 5 | Tan | Voltage quality module |
| 3* | 80 | - | Cooling fans |
| 4* | 60 | - | Diesel - Glow plugs |
| 5* | 80 | - | Electric Power Assisted Steering (EPAS) |
| 6 | 15 | Blue | Oxygen sensors |
| 7 | - | - | - |
| 8 | 20 | Yellow | Diesel and Petrol - Engine management control unit |
| 9 | 10 | Red | Diesel - Engine sensors |
| 10 | - | - | - |
| 11 | 10 | Red | Diesel and Petrol - Engine sensors |
| 12 | 15 | Blue | Diesel - Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) bypass, Water in fuel sensor |
| | | | Petrol - Ignition coils |
| 13 | - | - | - |
| 14 | 15 | Blue | Diesel - Engine sensors |
| | | | Petrol - Oxygen sensors |
| 15* | 40 | Green | Starter motor |
| 16* | 100 | - | PTC heater |
| 17* | 60 | - | Passenger compartment fuse box |
| 18* | 60 | - | Passenger compartment fuse box |
| 19* | 60 | - | Luggage compartment fuse box |
| 20* | 60 | - | Luggage compartment fuse box |
| 21* | 60 | - | Voltage quality module |
| 22* | 30 | Pink | Front wipers |
| 23* | 40 | Green | Passenger compartment fuse box |
| 24* | 30 | Pink | Diesel auto - Starter motor |
| 25* | 40 | Green | Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) |

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 26* | 40 | Green | Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) |
| 27* | 40 | Green | Passenger compartment fuse box |
| 28* | 40 | Green | Heater blower motor |
| 29* | 30 | Pink | Electric trailer brake (Australia) |
| 30 | 15 | Blue | Headlamp washer |
| 31 | 15 | Blue | Horns |
| 32 | 10 | Red | Air conditioning clutch |
| 33 | 5 | Tan | Relay coils - Horn, Heated front screen, Fuel pump |
| 34* | 40 | Green | Heated front screen - left side |
| 35* | 40 | Green | Heated front screen - right side |
| 36 | 5 | Tan | Relay coils - Engine Management System (EMS), Air conditioning clutch, Starter motor pinion |
| 37 | 20 | Yellow | Fuel pump |
| 38 | 5 | Tan | Steering wheel module |
| 39 | 5 | Tan | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) |
| 40 | 5 | Tan | Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) - Right headlamp |
| 41 | 5 | Tan | Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) - Left headlamp |
| 42 | 5 | Tan | Headlamp control unit, Dynamic headlamp levelling control unit |
| 43 | 5 | Tan | Climate/Heated seat relay coils |
| 44 | 10 | Red | Heated steering wheel |
| 45 | - | - | - |

*Land Rover recommends that these fuses should only be serviced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

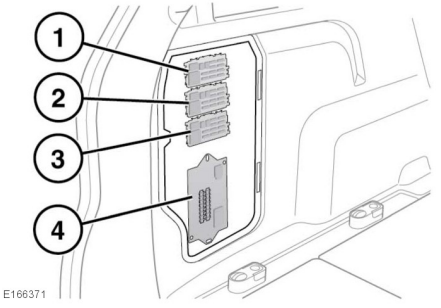
## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 5 | Tan | Smart key receiver, Alarm sensor, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) |
| 2 | - | - | - |
| 3 | 10 | Red | Front fog lamps |
| 4 | - | - | - |
| 5 | 5 | Tan | Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) |
| 6 | 5 | Tan | Adaptive dynamics, Electric differential control module (E-diff) |
| 7 | - | - | - |
| 8 | 25 | Clear | Passenger door module |
| 9 | - | - | - |
| 10 | 5 | Tan | Heated washer jets |
| 11 | 10 | Red | Trailer reverse lights |
| 12 | 5 | Tan | Reverse lights |
| 13 | - | - | - |
| 14 | 5 | Tan | Brake pedal switch |
| 15 | 30 | Green | Heated rear screen |
| 16 | 5 | Tan | Electric Power Assisted Steering (EPAS) |
| 17 | 5 | Tan | Keyless entry control module |
| 18 | - | - | - |
| 19 | 5 | Tan | Engine management control module |
| 20 | 5 | Tan | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) |
| 21 | 5 | Tan | Centre console switch, Outboard fascia switch |
| 22 | 5 | Tan | Automatic transmission |
| 23 | - | - | - |
| 24 | - | - | - |
| 25 | - | - | - |
| 26 | - | - | - |
| 27 | - | - | - |

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 28 | - | - | - |
| 29 | - | - | - |
| 30 | - | - | - |
| 31 | 5 | Tan | Rain sensor, Auxiliary lamp switch, Voltage quality module, Humidity sensor |
| 32 | 25 | Clear | Driver door module |
| 33 | - | - | - |
| 34 | 10 | Red | Locking fuel flap |
| 35 | - | - | - |
| 36 | 5 | Tan | Battery backed sounder |
| 37 | 20 | Yellow | Keyless entry control module |
| 38 | 15 | Blue | Front screen washer |
| 39 | 25 | Clear | Left rear door module |
| 40 | 5 | Tan | Driver door window switch |
| 41 | 5 | Tan | Gateway module |
| 42 | 30 | Green | Driver front seat |
| 43 | 15 | Blue | Rear screen washer |
| 44 | 25 | Clear | Right rear door module |
| 45 | 30 | Green | Front passenger seat |
| 46 | - | - | - |
| 47 | 20 | Yellow | Sunblind control unit |
| 48 | 15 | Blue | Trailer connector power supply |
| 49 | - | - | - |
| 50 | - | - | - |
| 51 | 5 | Tan | Steering wheel switches |
| 52 | 20 | Yellow | Cigar lighter |
| 53 | 20 | Yellow | Cubby box accessory power socket |
| 54 | - | - | - |
| 55 | 20 | Yellow | Rear console accessory power socket |

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 56 | 10 | Red | Supplementary Restraint system (SRS) |
| 57 | 10 | Red | Interior lamps |
| 58 | - | - | - |
| 59 | - | - | - |
| 60 | 5 | Tan | Occupancy sensor, Passenger airbag disabling lamp |
| 61 | 5 | Tan | Start control unit |
| 62 | - | - | - |
| 63 | 20 | Yellow | Luggage compartment accessory power socket |
| 64 | - | - | - |
| 65 | - | - | - |
| 66 | 5 | Tan | Diagnostics |
| 67 | 15 | Blue | Trailer |
| 68 | - | - | - |
| 69 | 15 | Blue | Automatic transmission |

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX




1. Fuse box 1
2. Fuse box 2
3. Fuse box 3
4. Fuse box 4

**Fuse box 1**

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| FA1 | 30 | Green | All Wheel Drive (AWD) - Disconnect and Efficient driveline |
| FA2 | 15 | Blue | Rear wiper relay |
| FA3 | 5 | Tan | All Wheel Drive (AWD) - Dynamic driveline |
| FA4 | 10 | Red | Telematics module |
| FA5 | 20 | Yellow | Heated driver seat module |
| FA6 | 20 | Yellow | Rear seat heater module (left side) |
| FA7 | 5 | Tan | Wade sensing module |
| FA8 | - | - | - |
| FA9 | - | - | - |
| FA10 | 20 | Yellow | Rear HEVAC control |
| FA11 | 30 | Pink | Trailer tow |
| FA12 | - | - | - |

**Fuse box 2**

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| FB1 | - | - | - |
| FB2 | - | - | - |
| FB3 | 10 | Red | Instrument cluster |
| FB4 | 5 | Tan | Gateway module |
| FB5 | 5 | Tan | Auto High Beam Control Module (AHBCM) |
| FB6 | 5 | Tan | Proximity camera or Rearview camera |
| FB7 | 5 | Tan | Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) |
| FB8 | 10 | Red | Head up display |
| FB9 | - | - | - |
| FB10 | - | - | - |
| FB11 | - | - | - |
| FB12 | 20 | Yellow | Audio amplifier |

**Fuse box 3**

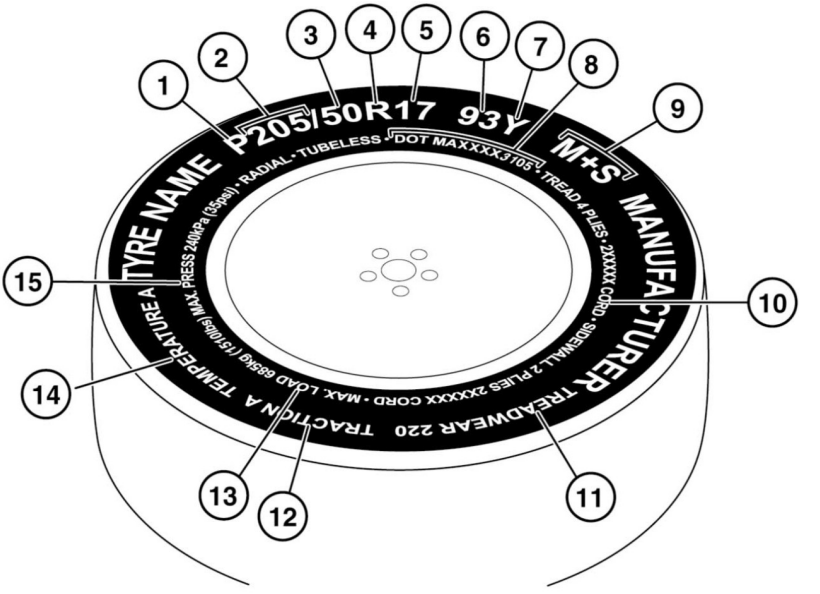
| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| FD1 | 20 | Yellow | Heated passenger seat module |
| FD2 | 20 | Yellow | Rear seat heater module (right side) |
| FD3 | 10 | Red | Rear and Glove box USB ports |
| FD4 | - | - | - |
| FD5 | 30 | Green | Magnaride |
| FD6 | 25 | Clear | Power operated tailgate |
| FD7 | 5 | Tan | FBH receiver |
| FD8 | - | - | - |
| FD9 | 5 | Tan | Comfort relay |
| FD10 | - | - | - |
| FD11 | - | - | - |
| FD12 | - | - | - |

**Fuse box 4**

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 15 | Blue | Touch screen, Front integrated control panel |
| 2 | 10 | Red | Audio amplifier |
| 3 | 10 | Red | Gesture tailgate |
| 4 | 10 | Red | Navigation, Television tuner, Audio video input/output panel |
| 5 | 15 | Blue | Audio head unit |
| 6 | 15 | Blue | Rear seat actuators |
| 7 | - | - | - |
| 8 | - | - | - |
| 9 | - | - | - |
| 10 | - | - | - |
| 11 | - | - | - |
| 12 | - | - | - |

| Fuse number | Rating (Amps) | Fuse colour | Circuits protected |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13 | - | - | - |
| 14 | - | - | - |
| 15 | 15 | Blue | Front and rear integrated control panels-heating and ventilation |
| 16 | 20 | Yellow | Fuel fired booster heater |

## TYRE MARKINGS




1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge in millimetres.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of Radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. This index is not always shown.

⚠ **The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.**

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre should be used for extended periods. See **221, SPEED RATING**.
8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last 4 numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 5111, the tyre was made in the 51st week of 2011.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.

**10.** The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.

**11.** Wear rate indicator: A tyre rated at 400, for example, will last longer than a tyre rated at 200.

**12.** The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA**, **A**, **B** and **C**.

**13.** The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.

**14.** Heat resistance grading: The tyre's resistance to heat is grade **A**, **B** or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.

**15.** The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. See **224, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

## SPEED RATING

| Rating | Speed km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| Q | 160 (99) |
| R | 170 (106) |
| S | 180 (112) |
| T | 190 (118) |
| U | 200 (124) |
| H | 210 (130) |
| V | 240 (149) |
| W | 270 (168) |
| Y | 300 (186) |

## TYRE CARE

**Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.**

**Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids as they may cause damage to the tyre.**

**Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.**

**If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow for example), do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer.**

**Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.**

***Note:*** *Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard, road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.*

All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

## TYRE PRESSURES

**All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.**

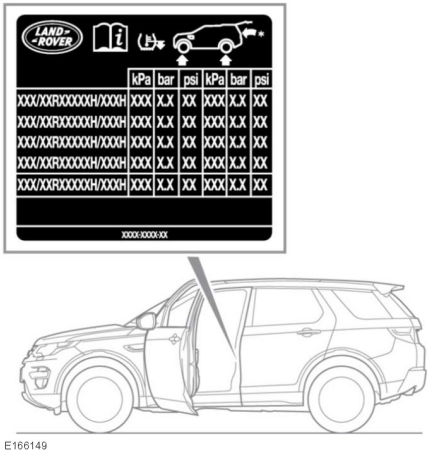
**Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.**

**Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. This can lead to sudden tyre failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear and poor handling.**

**Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated, it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Renew the tyre or contact an approved repairer.**

**Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**

**If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.**




E166149

The tyre information label is located on the driver's side B pillar.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

Dependent on the market, the tyre pressures can be displayed in the Message centre using the **Vehicle Info** and **Tyre Pressure Check** Instrument panel menus. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The display will show 2 tyre pressures for each tyre. The upper figure is the present tyre pressure and the lower figure (in brackets) is the recommended tyre pressure.

***Note:*** *The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either psi, bar, or kPa via the* ***Instrument Display*** *menu.*

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g., a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 14 kPa (0.14bar/2 psi) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check the tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 30 - 40 kPa (0.3 - 0.4 bar/4 - 6 psi). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyre's pressures:

To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge/inflator.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.

4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

| **Tyre pressures, all speeds up to a maximum of 200 km/h (130 mph)** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **5 seat vehicles** | | | |
| | | **1 to 4 occupants** | | **4 to 5 occupants** | |
| **Tyre size** | **Speed rating** | **Front** bar (psi. kPa) | **Rear** bar (psi. kPa) | **Front** bar (psi. kPa) | **Rear** bar (psi. kPa) |
| 225/65 R17 | V | 2.4 (35, 240) | 2.1 (30, 210) | 2.5 (36, 250) | 2.4 (35, 240) |
| 235/65 R17 | H or V | | | | |
| 235/60 R18 | V | | | | |
| 235/55 R19 | V | 2.5 (36, 250) | 2.2 (32, 220) | 2.5 (36, 250) | 2.5 (36, 250) |
| 245/45 R20 | V | | | 2.7 (39, 270) | 2.8 (41, 280) |
| | | **7 seat vehicles** | | | |
| | | **1 to 4 occupants** | | **4 to 7 occupants** | |
| **Tyre size** | **Speed rating** | **Front** bar (psi. kPa) | **Rear** bar (psi. kPa) | **Front** bar (psi. kPa) | **Rear** bar (psi. kPa) |
| 225/65 R17 | V | 2.4 (35, 240) | 2.1 (30, 210) | 2.5 (36, 250) | 2.8 (41, 280) |
| 235/65 R17 | H or V | | | | |
| 235/60 R18 | V | | | | |
| 235/55 R19 | V | 2.5 (36, 250) | 2.2 (32, 220) | 2.5 (36, 250) | 2.7 (40, 270) |
| 245/45 R20 | V | | | 2.7 (39, 270) | 3.0 (44, 300) |

| **Temporary use spare, tyre pressures - maximum 80 km/h (50 mph)** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Tyre size** | **Load/speed index** | **Front bar (psi. kPa)** | **Rear bar (psi. kPa)** |
| 155/85 R18 | - | 4.2 (61, 420) | 4.2 (61, 420) |

## TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures. For TPMS tyre valves, see **227, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM**.

## REPLACEMENT TYRES

**Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern.**

**The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.**

**If lower speed rated specialist tyres are fitted (e.g., winter tyres or off-road tyres) then the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. Consult your Land Rover dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyres maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.**

**Do not rotate the tyres around the vehicle.**

**If the use of tyres not recommended by Land Rover is unavoidable, make sure you read, and fully comply with, the tyre manufacturer's instructions.**

Tyre removal and fitting should be carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

When removing a tyre from a wheel or fitting a tyre to a wheel, make sure the TPMS sensor is not damaged.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tyres should be renewed in sets of 4. If this is not possible, renew the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are renewed, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

For the correct tyre specification and pressures, see **221, TYRE PRESSURES**. Alternatively contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

**Replacement TPMS sensor**

If a new TPMS sensor is to be fitted to a standard size running wheel on the vehicle, it should be installed by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer. The vehicle needs to be stationary for 15 minutes during the sensor fitment, before the system is ready to detect the new sensor. The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 15 minutes after the sensor change, and then remain stationary for 15 minutes to activate full TPMS operation.

If the TPMS warning lamp does not extinguish, even after checking the tyre pressures and driving for more than 10 minutes above 25 km/h (16 mph), seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre's sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra mileage.

In order to minimise flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum, as stated on the tyre's sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **221, TYRE PRESSURES**.

## TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are renewed at least every 6 years, but they may require renewing more frequently.

## USING WINTER TYRES

In many countries legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

M+S (mud and snow) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be renewed. The **M+S** marking on the tyre's sidewall indicates an 'all season' tyre designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow and ice.

This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

***Note:*** *A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre, and the vehicle must; therefore, be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult your Land Rover dealer for further information. In markets that require a tyres maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. These can be obtained from the tyre dealer.*

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable for use below 160 km/h (100 mph).

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 kilometres (100 miles) on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

| **Land Rover approved winter tyre sizes** | |
|---|---|
| **17 inch wheels** | 225/65 R17<br>235/65 R17 |
| **18 inch wheels** | 235/60 R18 |
| **19 inch wheels** | 235/55 R19 |
| **20 inch wheels** | 245/45 R20 * |

***Note:*** **Studded tyres are market dependent. Consult a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All 4 wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp will flash for 75 seconds and then remain illuminated. The Message centre will also display **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

## USING SNOW CHAINS

**Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.**

**Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.**

**Never fit traction devices to a temporary use spare wheel.**

Land Rover approved traction devices may be used to improve traction on compacted snow in heavy snow conditions. They should not be used in off-road conditions.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only Land Rover approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only Land Rover approved traction devices have been tested to make sure they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the vehicle's original equipment.
- For the 17, 18, 19 and 20 inch diameter wheels, only half chains can be fitted.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the front axle only.
- Always read, understand and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

## TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as Original Equipment (OE) for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

## TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

**TPMS provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.**

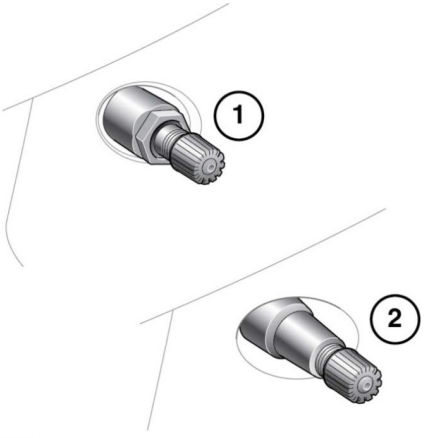
**TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road.**

When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always confirm the correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve stem.

***Note:*** *Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs,* ***TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT*** *is displayed in the Message centre.*

***Note:*** *Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always renew tyres in accordance with recommendations.*

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel, including the full size spare. Temporary use spare tyres are not monitored. See **228, TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE**.



E132513

Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (**1**). All Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (**2**).

***Note:*** *At each tyre change, a special service kit is required for each TPMS valve.*

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold and adjusted as necessary. The presence of a TPMS does not remove the need to check tyre pressures as part of a vehicle safety check. See **221, TYRE PRESSURES**.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated, accompanied with a message in the Message centre. See **55, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)**. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure.

TPMS also monitors the full size spare tyre pressure. If the pressure for the spare tyre is incorrect, the message **CHECK SPARE TYRE PRESSURE** is displayed, accompanied by the illumination of the warning lamp.

Vehicles supplied with 245/45/R20 tyres, will also have a speed based TPMS. If the vehicle is required to travel at speeds over 160 km/h (100 mph), the tyre pressures should be raised. See **221, TYRE PRESSURES**. Failure to do this may cause the warning message **TYRE PRESSURES LOW FOR SPEED** to be displayed in the Message centre.

***Note:*** *Make sure to reset the tyre pressures to the correct pressure when the vehicle will be travelling at speeds of less than 160 km/h (100 mph).*

## FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The system will automatically recognise any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (18 mph) any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

## TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

If the temporary use spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (18 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary use spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPMS display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

***Note:*** *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

## TYRE REPAIR KIT

**If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer before attempting the repair.**

Your vehicle may not be equipped with a spare tyre. If this is the case, in its place in the rear underfloor of the loadspace, you will find a tyre repair kit which comprises of a compressor and a bottle of sealant. The tyre repair kit can be used to repair **one** tyre and it is essential that you read the following guide before attempting to repair a tyre.

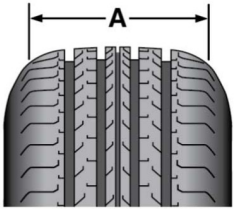
The tyre repair kit seals most punctures, with a maximum diameter of 6 mm (1/4 in.), within the tread area.

***Note:*** *The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life and the expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is renewed before the expiry date.*

## TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION

**Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.**

**Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.**




E149963

**Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A).**

**Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.**

**Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.**

**The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).**

**When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.**

**Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.**

**Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.**

**Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended when in use.**

**Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.**

**Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit when in use.**

**Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.**

**Check the tyre sidewall before inflating. If any cracks, damage or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.**

**Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage, or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.**

## USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

**Avoid skin contact with the sealant which contains natural rubber latex.**

- Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.
- Make sure the parking brake is applied and Park (**P**) is selected. Select 1st or reverse gear for vehicles with a manual transmission.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects such as nails, screws, etc. from the tyre.
- Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, as this may cause asphyxiation.
- To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

***Note:*** *All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.*

## REPAIR PROCEDURE

**Check the tyre's sidewall prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre's sidewall. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.**

**If the tyre's inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within a maximum of 10 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible, and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been renewed.**

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the fascia, in the driver's field of vision. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lamps.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver in a clockwise direction, until tight.

   ***Note:*** *Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal. Once the receiver has been fitted, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.*
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose. Connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve, making sure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Make sure the compressor switch is in the Off (**0**) position, then insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket. See **91, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**. Switch on the ignition. See **108, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**. Alternatively, if the vehicle is not in a confined space the engine can be started.
8. Switch on the compressor by positioning the switch to the (**I**) position.

9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi, 350 kPa).

   ***Note:*** *When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.*

10. During inflation, switch the compressor off briefly, to check the tyre pressure using the gauge mounted on the compressor.

    ***Note:*** *It should not take longer than 10 minutes to inflate the tyre. If, after a maximum of 10 minutes, the tyre has not yet reached minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.*

11. Once the tyre has been inflated to the required pressure, switch off the compressor. If desired, the ignition may be turned off after the compressor has been turned off.

12. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.

13. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve, by unscrewing it as quickly as possible in an counter-clockwise direction.

14. Replace the inflation hose's protective cap and the tyre valve cap.

15. Make sure the tyre repair kit (including the bottle and receiver caps) is placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after a maximum of 10 km (6 miles), so make sure it is easily accessible.

16. Immediately drive the vehicle for a maximum of 10 km (6 miles). This will allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

## CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR

⚠ **When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution and reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.**

⚠ **Consult a tyre repair centre or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for advice concerning the renewal of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.**

1. Drive the vehicle for a maximum of 10 km (6 miles), then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.

2. Remove the repair kit from the vehicle.

3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.

4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.

5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), adjust the pressure to the correct value.

6. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (**O**) position and insert the power cable connector into the auxiliary power socket.
   Switch on the ignition. Alternatively, if the vehicle is not in a confined space the engine can be started.

7. Switch the compressor to on (**I**) and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure. See **221, TYRE PRESSURES**.

8. To check the tyre pressure, turn off the compressor and then read the pressure from the gauge.
9. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure release valve.
10. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.
    - The use of the tyre repair kit sealant may lead to error prompts and incorrect readings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, use the tyre repair kit pressure gauge to check and adjust the damaged tyre's inflation pressure.
11. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, renew the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector's protective cap.
12. Make sure that the tyre repair kit is placed securely in the vehicle.
13. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Make sure that you make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used before the tyre is removed.
14. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver and the sealant bottle must be renewed once a new tyre has been fitted.

Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure you read and comply with the following warnings:

**Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.**

**Make sure the vehicle is on firm, level ground.**

**Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P) on automatic vehicles; select first or reverse gear on manual vehicles.**

**Switch on the hazard warning lamps.**

**Make sure the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.**

**Disconnect a trailer/caravan from the vehicle.**

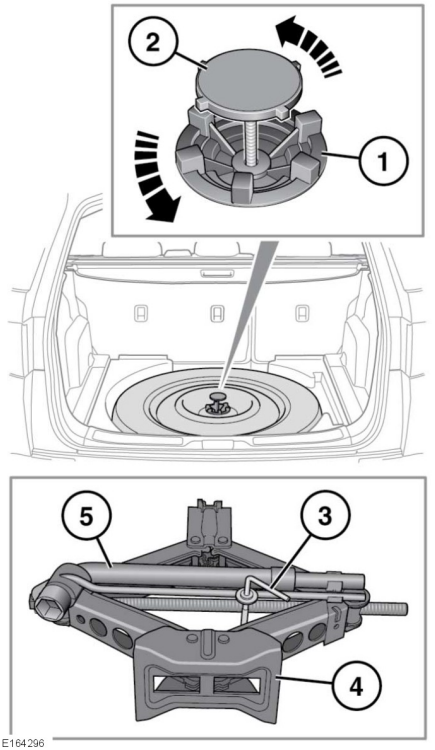
**Make sure all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.**

**Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.**

## TOOL KIT

**5 seat vehicles**

Lift the loadspace floor to access the temporary use spare wheel and tool kit.

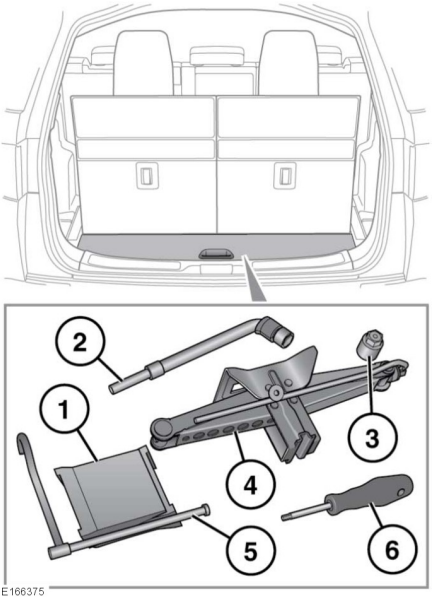



1. Temporary use spare wheel locking ring.
2. Temporary use spare wheel retaining bolt.
3. Tool kit retaining bolt.
4. Jack.
5. Wheel brace.

**Secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the retaining bolt.**

**7 seat vehicles**

Lift the loadspace floor to access the tool kit.




1. Wheel chocks.
2. Wheel brace.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
4. Jack.
5. Winch handle for lowering the temporary use spare wheel.
6. Rear bumper cover removal tool.

***Note:*** *Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.*

## REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

**Remove the temporary spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised. Do not stow the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.**

**The temporary spare wheel is extremely heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting or manoeuvring the wheels.**

**5 seat vehicles**

**Always secure the temporary spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the retaining bolt.**

1. Lift the loadspace floor to access the temporary spare wheel.
2. Turn the temporary spare wheel locking ring counter-clockwise to gain access to the retaining bolt.
3. Turn the retaining bolt counter-clockwise until it comes free.
4. Remove the temporary spare wheel.

**7 seat vehicles**

**The wheels are extremely heavy. Always take care when operating the spare wheel winch while removing or stowing the temporary spare wheel and the road wheel.**

It is recommended that the road wheel is always stowed underneath the vehicle following a puncture.

Always stow a road wheel, and the temporary spare wheel with the outer face of the wheel facing upwards.

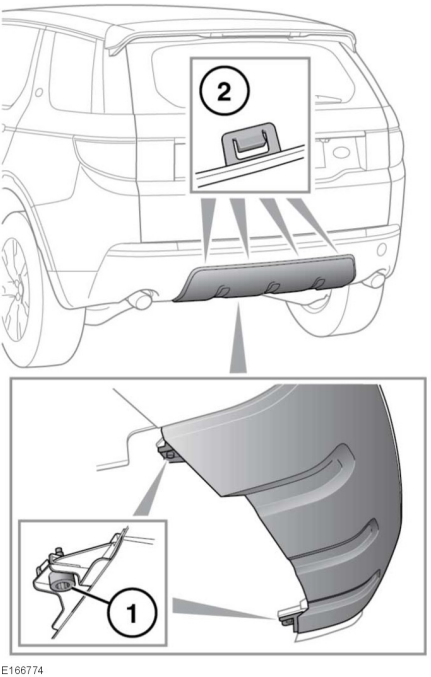
Do not operate the winch (retracting or extracting the cable) without pre-tensioning the cable as you do so. Doing so may cause damage to the winch. This pre-tensioning can be achieved, either with the weight of a temporary spare wheel, a road wheel, or by maintaining a tension using your hand.

**If when using your hand to tension the winch cable, take care not to trap your fingers.**

Do not use power tools to lower the temporary spare wheel. Doing so may damage the winch mechanism.

The temporary spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle. The winch to lower the spare wheel is located in the bottom of the tool tray.

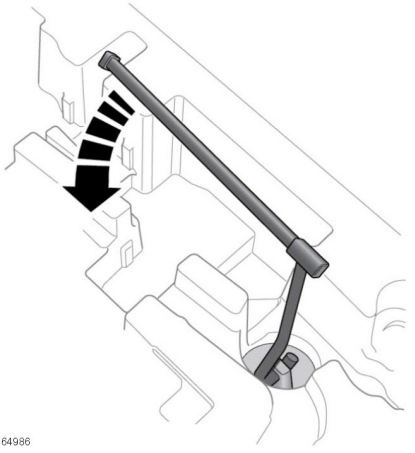
Before lowering the temporary spare wheel, remove the cover in the rear bumper.




E166774

1. Using the special tool located in the tool tray, remove the 2 fixings (**1**) and store them in a safe place. See **233, TOOL KIT**.
2. Remove the cover, easing it off the 4 retaining clips (**2**).

***Note:*** *The cover cannot be refitted after the full size wheel is to be stowed under the vehicle. Store the cover in the loadspace.*



E164986

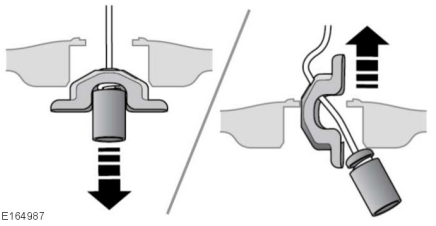
To remove the spare wheel:

1. Remove the jack to allow access to the temporary spare wheel winch.
2. Fit the winch handle to the temporary spare wheel winch and rotate counter-clockwise to lower the spare wheel.

   ***Note:*** *To avoid damage to the side trim and third row seats (if raised), slide the winch handle through the tube to shorten the handle.*
3. Rotate the winch handle until the temporary spare wheel is on the ground and the winch cable is slack.

   ***Note:*** *Do not attempt to turn the winch beyond the physical stop.*

To release the wheel from the winch:




Lift the temporary spare wheel and release the winch cable by passing it through the centre of the wheel, as shown in the above graphic.

To stow the removed road wheel:

1. Remove the centre cap from the road wheel and store it in a safe place.
2. Position the road wheel underneath the rear of the vehicle, with the outer face of the road wheel facing upwards.
3. Pass the winch cable through the centre of the wheel.
4. Start to turn the winch handle clockwise to take the slack out of the cable, then make sure the cable end is seated correctly before continuing to raise the wheel.
5. Continue to rotate the winch handle until the road wheel is in the stowed position.
6. Remove the winch handle and stow all of the tools and the jack in the tool tray.

***Note:*** *The bumper cover cannot be refitted to the vehicle with a stowed full sized wheel.*

**Operating the winch without a road wheel attached**

When extracting the winch cable after the winch cable has been retracted without a road wheel attached, operate the winch as follows:

Fit the winch handle to the temporary spare wheel winch and rotate counter-clockwise to extract the cable, while also applying tension by pulling on the end of the winch cable.

***Note:*** *If while the cable is being extracted, the winch feels tight or locks up, stop winding and wind back, at least one full turn. Apply a tension on the cable to release any cable slack, if necessary, giving it a sharp tug. Try the winch again and continue if the mechanism is free to operate. Repeat, if the winch feels tight or locks up again.*

If the winch feels tight or locks up, stop winding and wind back, at least one full turn. If this fails to free the winch mechanism, do not continue, as damage may be caused to the winch.

**Refitting the bumper cover**

When the temporary spare wheel is stowed underneath the vehicle, refit the bumper cover as follows:

1. Locate the 4 retaining clips on the cover into the slots in rear bumper.
2. Locate the 2 fixing points in the underside of the cover to the bumper and fasten the cover to the bumper using the fixings. Tighten the fixings with the special tool.

## IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

**Adhere to the instructions on the temporary spare wheel warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.**

**Where fitted, the temporary spare wheel is FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY. Drive with caution while the temporary spare wheel is fitted. Make sure an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.**

**Do not fit more than one temporary use spare wheel on the vehicle at any one time.**

**The temporary use spare wheel must be inflated to 4.2 bar (60 psi, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.**

**The temporary use spare wheel's, maximum speed is 80 km/h (50 mph).**

**Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary spare wheel is in use.**

**Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary spare wheel.**

## USING WHEEL CHOCKS

***Note:*** *Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit.*

Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit. Note the following advice when using wheel chocks:

**Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.**

**Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.**

**If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of both wheels on the axle not being raised.**

## LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Locking wheel nuts can be removed, only by using the special adaptor provided in the tool kit.

***Note:*** *When the vehicle is first supplied, the adaptor may be stored in the glove compartment. It should be removed and stored in the tool kit as soon as possible.*

***Note:*** *A code number is stamped onto the underside of the adaptor. If a replacement adaptor is required, you will be asked to quote this number. Make sure the number is recorded and kept safe, but it should not be kept with the vehicle.*

1. Insert the wheel nut adaptor into the locking wheel nut, making sure it is fully engaged.
2. Locate the wheel brace over the adaptor and unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter-clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

***Note:*** *After use, store the wheel nut adaptor correctly in the tool kit.*

## WHEEL CHANGING

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure you read and comply with the following warnings:

**Make sure the jack is on firm level ground.**

**Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.**

**Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in-line with the appropriate jacking point.**

**Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.**

**WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**

**Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement, may cause an injury.**

**Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.**

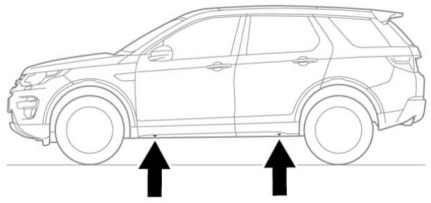
**Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.**

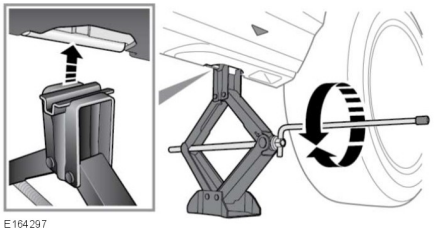
Jack up the vehicle using only the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

If your vehicle is fitted with side steps or tubes, DO NOT use them as jacking points.

***Note:*** *Your vehicle may be fitted with a tilt sensor, which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, the tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See* ***16, TILT SENSOR****.*

Before rasing the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts half a turn counter-clockwise.



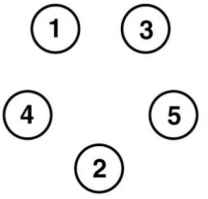


E164297

1. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point.

   ***Note:*** *Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.*
2. Unfold the cranking handle from its stowed position on the jack.
3. Rotate the handle clockwise to raise the jack until the jack, pin locates into the jacking point.
4. Raise the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
6. Remove the wheel and place it to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
7. Fit the temporary spare wheel to the hub.
8. Re-fit the wheel nuts and lightly tighten them, making sure that the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.
9. Make sure the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions before lowering the vehicle slowly and smoothly.

**10.** With all of the wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts must be tightened in sequence (see the illustration below) to the correct torque of 133 Nm (98 lb.ft).




E153421

***Note:*** *If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is renewed, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.

## RECOVERY METHOD

The method for recovery/transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

Make sure that vehicle recovery/transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel and the vehicle is secured correctly.

The recovery agent must activate the Transmission park release before recovery commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the Transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

This vehicle should not be towed on all 4 wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

## TOWING POINTS

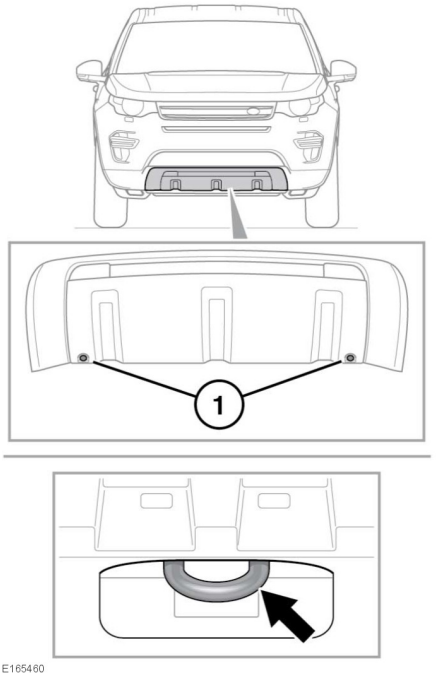
**The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.**

**Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.**

**Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.**

Remove the front towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss. The cover must be replaced before driving on the road.

The front towing eye is fixed and located behind the panel in the front bumper.

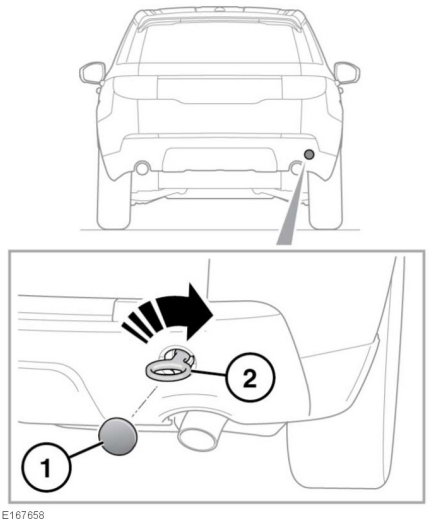



E165460

To access the front towing eye: Rotate the 2 fasteners (**1**) 90 degrees counter-clockwise. Pull the panel away from the front bumper.

The rear towing eye is located under the loadspace floor cover. The rear towing eye must be screwed into the towing point, located behind the panel on the right-side of the rear bumper.

***Note:*** *Panel design may vary depending on the vehicle specification.*




E167658

1. Pop out the access cover.
2. Locate the towing eye through the bumper and fully screw the towing eye clockwise into the towing point, until secure.

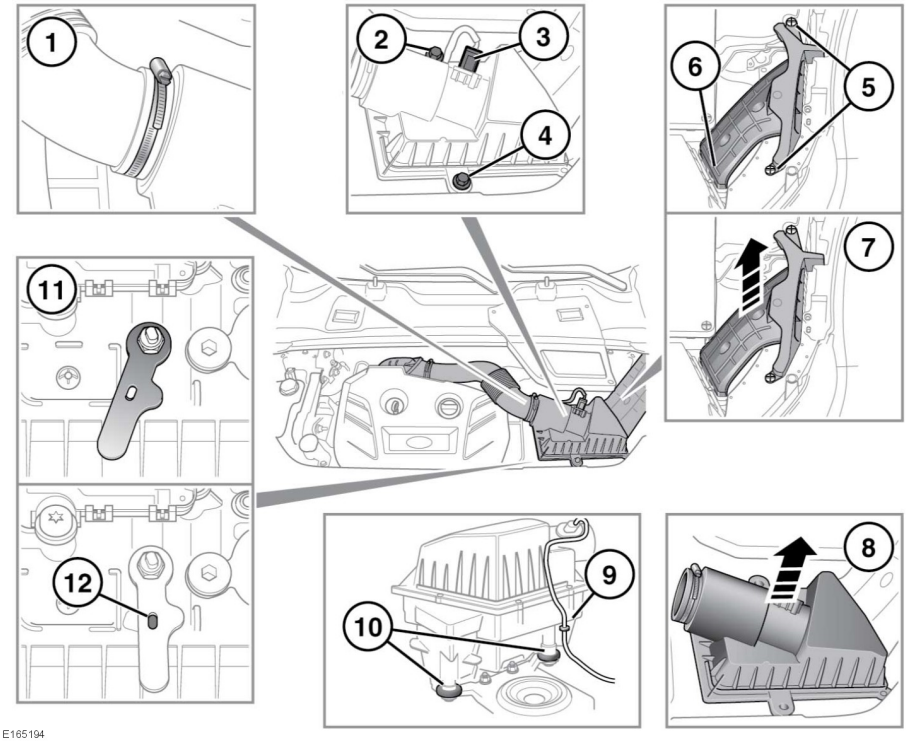
Fitment of the panels is the reverse of removal.

## TRANSMISSION PARK RELEASE

When recovering the vehicle, it is essential that the Transmission park release mechanism is activated. This will lock the transmission in Neutral (**N**) and prevent the transmission from automatically selecting Park (**P**). The Transmission park release mechanism is activated by a lever, beneath the air cleaner in the engine compartment.

**Make sure that the vehicle is secured with wheel chocks, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), or firmly press the brake pedal (this will require 2 people). Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, causing serious injury or death.**

***Note:*** *This procedure will require a tool with a 5 mm diameter, to lock the Transmission park release mechanism in the Neutral (**N**) position.*




E165194

To activate the Transmission park release mechanism, carry out the following:

1. Release the clip on the air cleaner outlet pipe.
2. Release the wiring harness clip.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Undo the bolt.
5. Rotate the 2 clips counter-clockwise and pull upwards to remove.
6. Release the clip.
7. Remove the air cleaner intake pipe.
8. Apply upwards pressure to the air cleaner assembly.
9. Release the wiring harness clip.
10. Release the air cleaner assembly from the 2 locating grommets, and remove the air cleaner assembly.

    ***Note:*** *Stow the air cleaner in a suitable place.*
11. Rotate the park release lever counter-clockwise, until it is in the forward position.
12. Insert a suitable tool with a 5 mm diameter (Allen key, drill bit, etc.), through the hole in the park release lever, and locate the tool in to the transmission casing.

***Note:*** *Make sure that the tool is fully engaged in to the transmission casing. Incorrect location of the tool may cause damage to the vehicle, and may cause the vehicle to return to the Park (**P**) position.*

When the transmission park release mechanism is activated, the gear selector will remain in **P**, but the selector indicator and the Instrument panel will both display a flashing **N**.

When vehicle transportation has been completed, the Transmission park release mechanism will need to be deactivated. To deactivate the Transmission park release mechanism, reverse the steps above.

## OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

**If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques, is undertaken.**

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at:
**www.landroverexperience.com**.

## BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

**If the vehicle is involved in a collision it should be checked by a Dealer/ Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified persons, before starting or driving.**

## AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM

***Note:*** *Fitment of the Pedestrian protection system is market and model dependent.*

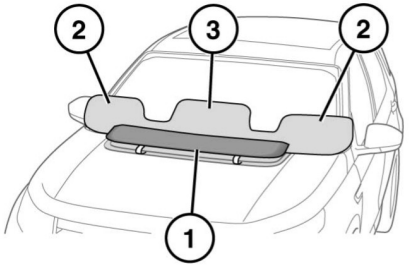
Following a collision, the vehicle must be stopped as soon as it is safe to do so.

The hazard warning lamps will be activated and can only be switched off by pressing the engine Start/stop button to turn the engine off and on again.

A warning message will appear in the Message centre and, if requested, the vehicle should be transported to the nearest Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

If the Pedestrian airbag deploys following a collision and none of the internal airbags have deployed, the vehicle can be driven after the Pedestrian airbag has been stowed. See **244, REPACKING THE PEDESTRIAN AIRBAG**.

## REPACKING THE PEDESTRIAN AIRBAG




E166795

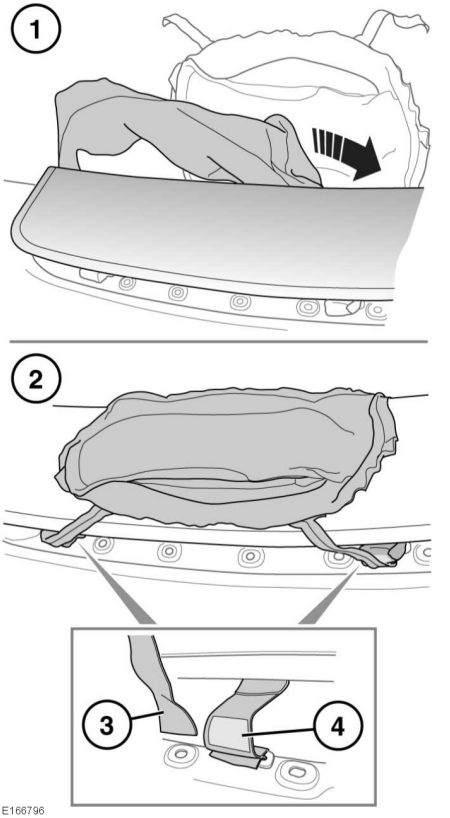
**1.** Airbag cover.

**2.** Airbag side panels inflated.

**3.** Airbag centre panel inflated.

Repack the Pedestrian airbag, as follows:

***Note:*** *If the airbag is not fully deflated, fold and compress the airbag to release air, before starting to repack.*




E166796

**1.** Fold both of the airbag side panels across the vehicle, and underneath the airbag cover.

**2.** Pull the airbag centre panel over the airbag cover.

3. On each side, pull the airbag centre panel as tight as possible. Using the velcro panels, attach the straps on the centre airbag panel (**3**) to the airbag cover straps (**4**).

Following repacking, if safe to do so, the vehicle should be driven with caution to a Dealer/Authorised Repairer to be checked for damage and for the replacement of the Pedestrian airbag.

## EVENT DATA RECORDING

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

To access this information special equipment must be connected directly to the recording modules. Land Rover do not access EDR information without obtaining consent unless pursuant to a court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority.

Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Land Rover.

***Note:*** *No personal data (e.g., name, gender, age and crash location) are recorded.*

**South Korea Only**

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR). An EDR stores driving information at the moment of accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables to confirm the information stored. EDR information helps understanding the circumstances of accident more clearly.

## SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle such as engine, throttle, steering or brakes.

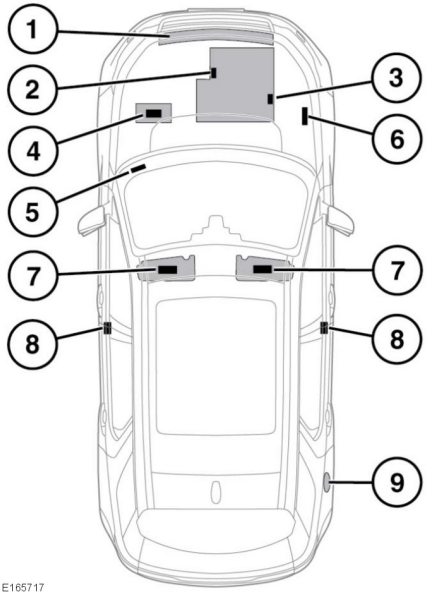
In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Land Rover and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle.

## LABEL LOCATIONS

Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.

Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch (ignition) is turned on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:




1. Air conditioning label: Located on the bonnet locking platform.
2. Engine identification information: Stamped into the engine mounting flange.
3. Engine information label: Located on the top right side of the engine cover.
4. Battery warning symbols: Located on the top of the battery.
5. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on a plate which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the front windscreen.
   The VIN can also be shown in the Message centre via the **Vehicle Info** and **Vehicle VIN** Instrument panel menus. See **49, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

   ***Note:*** *If you need to communicate with a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.*
   The vehicle's built date is shown on the VIN label.

   ***Note:*** *The vehicle's built date is the calendar month and year in which the body and power-train assemblies were conjoined and the vehicle was driven from the production line. The vehicle's built date may also be shown on the tyre pressure label.*
6. The VIN is also stamped into the right side, front inner wing.
7. Airbag label and vehicle handling label: Located on the sun visors.
8. Tyre pressure and airbag warning labels. Left side B post: VIN label.
9. Fuel specification label: Located inside the fuel filler flap.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to make sure the vehicle and its features are used safely.

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

| Description | Diesel 150 PS | Diesel 190 PS | Petrol |
|---|---|---|---|
| Number of cylinders | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| Displacement (cc) | 2 179 | 2 179 | 1 999 |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 | 1-3-4-2 |
| Compression ratio | 15.8:1 | 15.8:1 | 10:1 |
| Maximum torque | 400 Nm at 1 750 rpm | 420 Nm at 1 750 rpm | 340 Nm at 1 750 rpm |
| Power output | 110 kW (150 PS) at 4 000 rpm | 140 kW (190 PS) at 3 500 rpm | 177 kW (240 PS) at 5 500 rpm |

## LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

| Description | Variant | Specification |
|---|---|---|
| Engine oil | Diesel with DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) | SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS-M2C934-B. If unavailable, 5W-30 engine oils to ACEA C2 specification may be used. |
| | Diesel without DPF | SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS-M2C913- C. If unavailable, 5W-30 engine oils to ACEA A5/B5 specification may be used. |
| | Petrol | SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification WSS-M2C913-C. |
| Gearbox oil | Manual | Land Rover recommends Castrol ECO MTF FE 75W. |
| | Automatic | Land Rover recommends Shell AFT L12108. |
| Active driveline disconnect hydraulic actuator | Vehicles with active driveline | Land Rover recommends Pentosin CHF11S. |
| Power transfer unit | Vehicles without active driveline | Land Rover recommends Castrol BOT448. |
| | Vehicles with active driveline | Land Rover recommends Castrol BOT720. |
| Haldex coupling | Vehicles without active driveline | Land Rover recommends Statoil SL 12 301. |
| Rear differential oil | Vehicles without active driveline | Land Rover recommends Castrol BOT448. |
| | Vehicles with active driveline | Land Rover recommends Castrol BOT720. |
| Brake/Clutch fluid | All vehicles | Use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable for topping up, a Low Viscosity, DOT4 brake fluid that meets the requirements of ISO 4925 class 6 may be used. |
| Screen wash | All vehicles | Screen wash with frost protection. |
| Screen cleaning paste | All vehicles | Land Rover screen cleaning paste DNJ500340. |
| Coolant | All vehicles | 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water - Land Rover recommends Texaco XLC. |

Land Rover recommends: **Castrol EDGE Professional**

## CAPACITIES

| Item | Variant | Capacity litres (pints) |
|---|---|---|
| Fuel tank | Diesel | 65 (14.3 gallons) |
| | Petrol | 70 (15.4 gallons) |
| Engine oil refill and filter change | Diesel | 5.9 (10.4) |
| | Petrol | 5.4 (9.5) |
| Gearbox | Manual | 1.9 (3.3) |
| | Automatic | 7.0 (12.3) |
| Washer reservoir | With and without headlamp powerwash | 4.1 (8.7) |
| Cooling system (refill) | Diesel manual with auxiliary heater | 5.6 (9.9) |
| | Diesel manual without auxiliary heater | 5.4 (9.5) |
| | Diesel automatic with auxiliary heater | 5.9 (10.4) |
| | Diesel automatic without auxiliary heater | 5.7 (10.0) |
| | Petrol with auxiliary heater | 4.6 (8.1) |
| | Petrol without auxiliary heater | 4.4 (7.7) |

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All the oil levels must be checked using the level plugs, the Message centre information or the drain and refill procedure, as applicable.

## WEIGHTS

**Vehicle weights**

| Variant | Vehicle weight from kg (lb) | Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)[1] kg (lb) | Gross Train Weight (GTW)[2] kg (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Diesel 150PS manual, with 5 seats | 1 765 (3 891) | 2 505 (5 523) | 4 305 (9 491) |
| Diesel 190PS manual, with 5 seats | 1 765 (3 891) | 2 505 (5 523) | 4 505 (9 932) |
| Diesel 150PS manual, with 7 seats | 1 854 (4 087) | 2 600 (5 732) | 4 350 (9 590) |
| Diesel 190PS manual, with 7 seats | 1 854 (4 087) | 2 600 (5 732) | 4 600 (10 141) |

| Variant | Vehicle weight from kg (lb) | Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)[1] kg (lb) | Gross Train Weight (GTW)[2] kg (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Diesel 150PS automatic, with 5 seats | 1 775 (3 913) | 2 505 (5 523) | 4 705 (10 373) |
| Diesel 190PS automatic, with 5 seats | 1 775 (3 913) | 2 505 (5 523) | 5 005 (11 034) |
| Diesel 150 and 190PS automatic, with 7 seats | 1 863 (4 107) | 2 600 (5 732) | 4 800 (10 582) |
| Petrol, with 5 seats | 1 744 (3 845) | 2 505 (5 523) | 4 505 (9 932) |
| Petrol, with 7 seats | 1 841 (4 059) | 2 575 (5 677) | 4 575 (10 086) |

[1] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

[2] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

Note: For every 1 000m increase above sea level, GTW must be reduced by 10%.

| Variant | Maximum front axle load[1] kg (lb) | Maximum rear axle load[1] kg (lb) | Maximum roof rack load[2] kg (lb) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5 seat vehicles | 1 340 (2 954) | 1 270 (2 800) | 75 (165) |
| 7 seat vehicles | 1 310 (2 888) | 1 360 (2 998) | 75 (165) |

[1] The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

[2] This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.

**Towing weights**

| Trailer/Vehicle | Maximum weight kg (lb) |
|---|---|
| Unbraked trailers, all vehicles | 750 (1 650) |
| Braked trailer, Diesel 150PS, manual, with 5 seats | 1 800 (3 968) |
| Braked trailer, Diesel 190PS, manual, with 5 seats | 2 000 (4 409) |
| Braked trailer, Diesel 150PS, manual, with 7 seats | 1 750 (3 858) |
| Braked trailer, Diesel 190PS, manual, with 7 seats | 2 000 (4 409) |
| Braked trailer, Diesel 150PS, automatic, with 5 seats | 2 200 (4 850) |
| Braked trailer, Diesel 190PS, automatic, with 5 seats | 2 500 (5 512) |

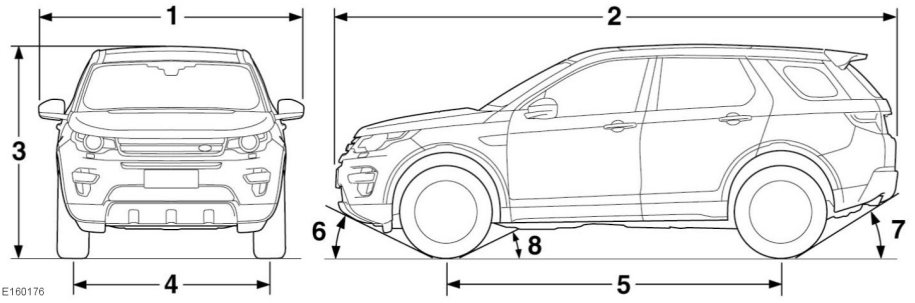
| Trailer/Vehicle | Maximum weight kg (lb) |
|---|---|
| Braked trailer, Diesel 150 and 190PS, automatic, with 7 seats | 2 200 (4 850) |
| Braked trailer, Petrol, with 5 and 7 seats | 2 000 (4 409) |

For more information on Towing, see **95, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

## WHEEL ALIGNMENT DATA

| | |
|---|---|
| Wheel alignment - front toe | + 0.22° |
| Wheel alignment - rear toe | +0.18° |
| Camber - front | -0.51° |
| Camber - rear | -1.25° |

## DIMENSIONS



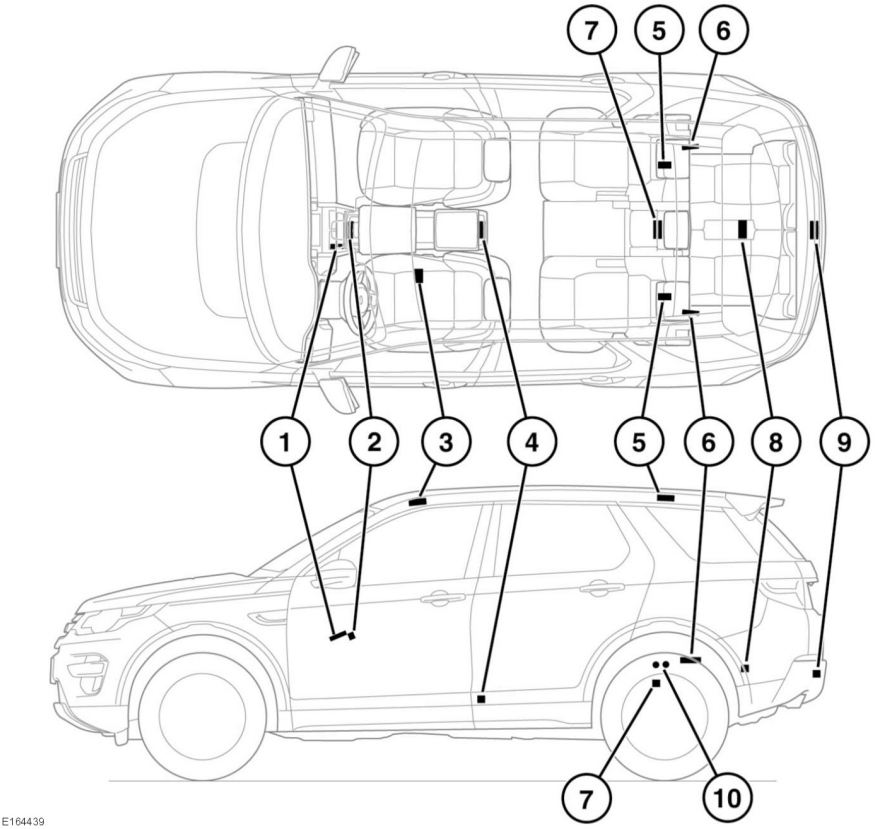

| Item | Description | mm (inches) | Degrees |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Width (mirrors extended) | 2 173 (85.5) | - |
| | Width (mirrors folded) | 2 069 (81.4) | - |
| 2 | Length (including number plate plinth) | 4 590 (180.7) | - |
| 3 | Height (including the roof antennae) | 1 724 (67.8) | - |
| | Height with roof side rails and cross bars | 1 700 (66.9) | - |
| 4 | Track - front | 1 621 (63.8) | - |
| | Track - rear | 1 630 (64.1) | - |
| 5 | Wheelbase | 2 741 (107.9) | - |
| 6 | Approach angle | - | 25.4° |
| 7 | Maximum departure angle | - | 31.3° |
| 8 | Ramp angle (5 and 7 seat vehicles) | - | 21.2° |
| - | Maximum wading depth | 600 (23.6) | - |
| - | Minimum ground clearance | 212 (8.3) | - |
| - | Turning circle (kerb to kerb) | 11.6 m (38 ft) | - |

## BULB SPECIFICATION

Before attempting to renew a bulb, make sure that both the affected lamp and the vehicle's ignition, are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

| Lamp | Specification | Power (Watts) |
|---|---|---|
| Halogen headlamp (DRL/high beam) | H15 | 15/55 |
| Halogen headlamp (low beam) | H7 LL | 55 |
| Front direction indicators | PSY24W | 24 |
| Rear direction indicators | PY21W | 21 |
| Reverse lamps | W16W | 16 |

## SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS




1. Centre console transmitter.
2. Centre console transmitter.
3. Roof keyless receiver.
4. Rear of centre console transmitter.
5. Loadspace transmitters.
6. Floor console rear transmitters (5 seat vehicles).
7. Floor console rear transmitter (7 seat vehicles).
8. Floor console rear transmitter (7 seat vehicles).
9. Tailgate passive entry receiver.
10. Low frequency antennas.

**Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.**

## RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

| Service | Frequency Band | Max. Output | Antenna Position | Specific Conditions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4m VHF | 70 - 85 MHz | 30 W / CW<br>40 W / AM | Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |
| 2m VHF | 142 - 175 MHz | 30 W / CW<br>40 W / AM | Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |
| TETRA | 380 - 422 MHz | 10 W / CW<br>10 W / PM | Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |
| UHF | 450 - 470 MHz | 10 W / CW | Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |
| Bluetooth | 2400 - 2483.5 MHz | 10 mW | Anywhere on the vehicle. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |
| Road Telematics | 5795 - 5815 MHz | 2 W eirp | Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |
| Road Telematics | 63 - 64 GHz | 2 W eirp | Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass. | Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609. |

**South Korea only**

Omnidirectional transmission or
point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited
according to the law.

E150388

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG ▪P.O. Box 10 09 43 ▪D-93009 Regensburg

| | |
|---|---|
| Name | Dagmar Kolar |
| Department | SV C TS RBG EMC-Laboratory |
| Tel. | +49(0)941/790-6699 |
| Fax | +49(0)941/790-136699 |
| E-Mail | dagmar.kolar@siemens.com |
| Internet | www.siemensvdo.de |
| Our Ref. | Doc_5WK49096.doc |
| Date. | 03/08/2005 |


**Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)**

| | |
|---|---|
| Manufacturer: | Siemens VDO Automotive AG<br>Body & Chassis Electronics |
| Address: | Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG<br>Siemenstrasse 12<br>D-93049 Regensburg<br>Germany |
| Product type designation: | 5WK4 9096 |
| Intended use: | Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems |

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

| | |
|---|---|
| Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 60950:2000 |
| Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 301 489-1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08) |
| Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 300 220-1: V1.3.1 (2000-09) |

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-08-03

i. V. .....
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V. .....
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

**SiemensVDO Automotive AG** Body & Chassis Electronics

Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller

Postal Address:
SiemensVDO Automotive AG

P.O. Box 10 09 43
D-93009 Regensburg

Office Address:
Siemenstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel. +49(0)941/790-0





SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG ▪P.O. Box 10 09 43 ▪D-93009 Regensburg

| | |
|---|---|
| Name | Dagmar Kolar |
| Department | SV C TS RBG EMC Laboratory |
| Tel. | +49(0)941/790-6699 |
| Fax | +49(0)941/790-1366999 |
| E-Mail | dagmar.kolar@siemens.com |
| Internet | www.siemensvdo.de |
| Our Ref. | Doc_S122780002.doc |
| Date. | 09/11/2005 |


**Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)**

| | |
|---|---|
| Manufacturer: | Siemens VDO Automotive AG<br>Body & Chassis Electronics |
| Address: | Siemensstrasse 12<br>D-93055 Regensburg<br>Germany |
| Product type designation: | S122780002 |
| Intended use: | Radio frequency transmitter used Tire Pressure Monitoring system |

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

| | |
|---|---|
| Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 60950: 2000 |
| Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 301 489 -1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08) |
| Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 300 220 -1: V1.3.1 (2000-09) |

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-11-09

i. V. .....
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i. V. .....
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

**SiemensVDO Automotive AG** Body & Chassis Electronics

Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller

Postal Address:
SiemensVDO Automotive AG

P.O. Box 10 09 43
D-93009 Regensburg

Office Address:
Siemensstraße 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

E150389

Lear Corporation

Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA

Phone (248) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

**INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL**

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

### *Key fobs*

Land Rover, Range Rover,

**********

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AW93-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

**********

Lear Corporation

Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA

Phone (248) 447-1500

### *RKE Receiver*

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

**********

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

**********

### *Passive Entry / Passive Start Module*

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

**********

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

---

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

E150390

## EC Declaration of Conformity

| | |
|---|---|
| EC Directive. | **1999/5/EC** |
| Manufacturer: | **Lear Corporation** |
| Type Designation / FCC ID: | **KOBJBG10B** |
| Model Numbers: | **5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE** |
| Description / Intended Use: | **Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator** |
| Trademarks. | **Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar** |
| Applied Standards. | **European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC**<br>**ETSI EN 60950**<br>**ETSI EN 300 330**<br>**CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03**<br>**AS/NZS 4268**<br>**FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15** |
| Responsible Person: | **Kevin Cotton**<br>**Lear Corporation**<br>**21557 Telegraph Road**<br>**Southfield, Michigan 48033**<br>**United States of America** |

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
**Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation**

Date. **27 March 2009**

## EC Declaration of Conformity

| | |
|---|---|
| EC Directive: | **1999/5/EC** |
| Manufacturer: | **Lear Corporation** |
| Type Designation / FCC ID. | **KOBJBG10A** |
| Model Numbers: | **5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440** |
| Description / Intended Use: | **Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator** |
| Trademarks: | **Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar** |
| Applied Standards: | **European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC**<br>**ETSI EN 60950**<br>**ETSI EN 300 330**<br>**CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03**<br>**AS/NZS 4268**<br>**FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15** |
| Responsible Person: | **Kevin Cotton**<br>**Lear Corporation**<br>**21557 Telegraph Road**<br>**Southfield, Michigan 48033**<br>**United States of America** |

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
**Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation**

Date. **27 March 2009**

E150391

## EC Declaration of Conformity

| | |
|---|---|
| EC Directive: | **1999/5/EC** |
| Manufacturer: | **Lear Corporation** |
| Type Designation: | **5E0760127** |
| Model Numbers: | **5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC** |
| Description / Intended Use: | **RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems** |
| Trademarks: | **Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar** |
| Applied Standards: | **European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC**<br>**ETSI EN 60950**<br>**ETSI EN 300 220**<br>**CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03**<br>**AS/NZS 4268** |
| Responsible Person. | **Kevin Cotton**<br>**Lear Corporation**<br>**21557 Telegraph Road**<br>**Southfield, Michigan 48033**<br>**United States of America** |

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
**Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation**

Date: **27 March 2009**

## EC Declaration of Conformity

| | |
|---|---|
| EC Directive: | **1999/5/EC** |
| Manufacturer: | **Lear Corporation** |
| Type Designation: | **15K601** |
| Model Numbers: | **5E0B50127, 5E0B60127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH22-15K601-BC** |
| Description / Intended Use: | **Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob** |
| Trademarks: | **Land Rover / Range Rover** |
| Applied Standards: | **CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03**<br>**ETSI EN 60950**<br>**ETSI EN 300 220**<br>**ETSI EN 301 489**<br>**IEC EN 60950**<br>**AS/NZS 4268** |
| Responsible Person. | **Kevin Cotton**<br>**Lear Corporation**<br>**21557 Telegraph Road**<br>**Southfield, Michigan 48033**<br>**United States of America** |

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed. Kevin Cotton
**Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation**

Date: **26 March 2009**

E150392

QuieTek

# 快特電波股份有限公司
## 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770337
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz ; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0570T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

# 快特電波股份有限公司
## 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B60227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0550T5

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150393

QuieTek

# 快特電波股份有限公司
## 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B50227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz；84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0551T7

說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

# 快特電波股份有限公司
## 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770237
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz；63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0560T8

說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150394

QuieTek

# 快特電波股份有限公司
## 低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

| | |
|---|---|
| 一、申 請 者： | Lear Corporation |
| 二、製造廠商： | Lear Corporation |
| 三、器材名稱： | Jaguar fob |
| 四、廠牌/型號： | JAGUAR / 5E0B4P217 |
| 五、發射功率（電場強度）： | 315MHz ; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak) |
| 六、工作頻率： | 315MHz |
| 七、審驗日期： | 98 年 07 月 01 日 |
| 八、審驗合格標籤式樣： | CCAH09LP0830T1 |

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。依電信管制射頻器材審驗辦法第15條規定，持有人得經由國際網路申請同意他人於同廠牌同型號之電信管制射頻器材使用型式認證標籤，並於次日起 30 天內，應檢具「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標籤或符合性聲明標籤同意使用備查表」送本會備查。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範(LP0002 3.4.2節)之規定。
2、驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材使用固定式天線，廠牌/型號為:Lear Corporation / N/A。

Continental

Continental Automotive GmbH – Postfach 100 963 – 93009 Regensburg

Kolar Dagmar
AQL RBG 42
Phone +49 (941) 790-6699
Fax +49 (941) 790-136699
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

| Date | Your message dated | Our Reference | Your reference |
|---|---|---|---|
| July 29, 2008 | | | |

**Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)**

| | |
|---|---|
| Manufacturer: | Continental Automotive GmbH |
| Address: | Siemensstrasse 12<br>D-93055 Regensburg<br>Germany |
| Product type designation: | S180 052 020 A |
| Intended use: | Tire Pressure System |

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

| | |
|---|---|
| Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 60950-1: 2006 |
| Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 301 489 -1: V1.6.1 (2005-09)<br>EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08) |
| Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: | *Applied standard(s):*<br>EN 300 220 -1: V2.1.1 (2006-04)<br>EN 300 220 -2: V2.1.1 (2006-04) |

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

E150395

전자문서확인번호 WHSW-31GL-V7SG-VXVD

# 방송통신기기인증서

## *Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment*

| | |
|---|---|
| 인증의 종류 *Certification Type* | 형식등록(Type Registration) |
| 상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant* | LEAR CORPORATION |
| 기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name* | 특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기) |
| 기본모델명 *Basic Model Number* | 5E0B40 |
| 파생모델명 *Series Model Number* | |
| 인증번호 *Certification No* | LER-5E0B40 |
| 제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin* | Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국 |
| 형식기호 *Type Identification* | LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1 |
| 인증연월일 *Date of Certification* | 2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date) |
| 기타 *Others* | |

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전파연구소장

*Director General of Radio Research Laboratory*

*Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea*



전자문서확인번호 NC49-Y219-MT4V-UKBD

# 방송통신기기인증서

## *Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment*

| | |
|---|---|
| 인증의 종류 *Certification Type* | 형식등록(Type Registration) |
| 상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant* | LEAR CORPORATION |
| 기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name* | 데이터전송용 무선기기 |
| 기본모델명 *Basic Model Number* | 5E0B5P127 |
| 파생모델명 *Series Model Number* | 5E0B50,5E0B60 |
| 인증번호 *Certification No* | LER-5E0B5P127 |
| 제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin* | Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국 |
| 형식기호 *Type Identification* | LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1 |
| 인증연월일 *Date of Certification* | 2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date) |
| 기타 *Others* | |

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 28일(Date)

전파연구소장

*Director General of Radio Research Laboratory*

*Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea*

E150396

전자문서확인번호 7N7R-CFNJ-RMWI-SU1X

# 방송통신기기인증서

*Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment*

| | |
|---|---|
| 인증의 종류 *Certification Type* | 형식등록(Type Registration) |
| 상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant* | LEAR CORPORATION |
| 기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name* | 미약 전계강도 무선기기 |
| 기본모델명 *Basic Model Number* | 5E0770237 |
| 파생모델명 *Series Model Number* | |
| 인증번호 *Certification No* | LER-5E0770237 |
| 제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin* | Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인 |
| 형식기호 *Type Identification* | LPD-103L0.125TA1D |
| 인증연월일 *Date of Certification* | 2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date) |
| 기타 *Others* | |

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

전파연구소장

*Director General of Radio Research Laboratory*

*Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea*



전자문서확인번호 JVC5-A5YQ-BF4C-1DBT

# 방송통신기기인증서

*Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment*

| | |
|---|---|
| 인증의 종류 *Certification Type* | 형식등록(Type Registration) |
| 상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant* | LEAR CORPORATION |
| 기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name* | 미약 전계강도 무선기기 |
| 기본모델명 *Basic Model Number* | 5E0770237 |
| 파생모델명 *Series Model Number* | 5E0770337 |
| 인증번호 *Certification No* | LER-5E0770237 |
| 제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin* | Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인 |
| 형식기호 *Type Identification* | LPD-103L0.125TA1D |
| 인증연월일 *Date of Certification* | 2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date) |
| 기타 *Others* | |

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 18일(Date)

전파연구소장

*Director General of Radio Research Laboratory*

*Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea*

**Independent Communications Authority of South Africa**
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

# Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

**TA-2009/302**

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

## Company Particulars

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Name | : | **Jaguar Land Rover SA** |
| Street Address | : | **Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton** |
| Telephone Number | : | **012 842 3274** |
| Facsimile Number | : | **012 845 1005** |
| Registration Number | : | **2001/027269/07** |

## Description of Apparatus

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Category | : | **Remote Function Actuator (RFA)** |
| Model | : | **KOBJBG10B** |
| Frequency Range | : | **119 – 135 kHz** |
| ITU Emission Code | : | **12KG1D** |
| Modulation | : | **BPSK** |
| Power Output | : | **+37.7 DbµA/m @ 3m** |
| Channel Spacing | : | **-** |
| Features | : | **-** |

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

**Philemon Molefe**
**Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology**

0 9 JUN 2009

P.Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Bulyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sotshwa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

**Independent Communications Authority of South Africa**
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

# Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

**TA-2009/303**

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

## Company Particulars

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Name | : | **Jaguar Land Rover SA** |
| Street Address | : | **Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton** |
| Telephone Number | : | **012 842 3274** |
| Facsimile Number | : | **012 845 1005** |
| Registration Number | : | **2001/027269/07** |

## Description of Apparatus

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Category | : | **Remote Function Actuator (RFA)** |
| Model | : | **KOBJBG10A** |
| Frequency Range | : | **119 – 135 kHz** |
| ITU Emission Code | : | **12KG1D** |
| Modulation | : | **BPSK** |
| Power Output | : | **+40.7 DbµA/m @ 3m** |
| Channel Spacing | : | **-** |
| Features | : | **-** |

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

**Philemon Molefe**
**Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology**

0 9 JUN 2009

P.Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Bulyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sotshwa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

E150308

**Independent Communications Authority of South Africa**
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

# Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

**TA-2009/304**

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

## Company Particulars

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Name | : | **Jaguar Land Rover SA** |
| Street Address | : | **Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton** |
| Telephone Number | : | **012 842 3274** |
| Facsimile Number | : | **012 845 1005** |
| Registration Number | : | **2001/027269/07** |

## Description of Apparatus

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Category | : | **Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver** |
| Model | : | **5E0760127** |
| Frequency Range | : | **433.05 – 434.79 MHz** |
| ITU Emission Code | : | **739KK1D** |
| Modulation | : | **ASK, FSK** |
| Power Output | : | **-** |
| Channel Spacing | : | **-** |
| Features | : | **-** |

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

**Philemon Molefe**
**Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology**

0 9 JUN 2009

P.Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucikwa,

**Independent Communications Authority of South Africa**
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

# Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

**TA-2009/305**

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

## Company Particulars

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Name | : | **Jaguar Land Rover SA** |
| Street Address | : | **Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton** |
| Telephone Number | : | **012 842 3274** |
| Facsimile Number | : | **012 845 1005** |
| Registration Number | : | **2001/027269/07** |

## Description of Apparatus

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Category | : | **Key Fob Transmitter** |
| Model | : | **15K601** |
| Frequency Range | : | **433.05 MHz** |
| ITU Emission Code | : | **739KK1D** |
| Modulation | : | **ASK, FSK** |
| Power Output | : | **-14.6 dBm** |
| Channel Spacing | : | **-** |
| Features | : | **-** |

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

**Philemon Molefe**
**Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology**

0 9 JUN 2009

P.Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucikwa,
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), BK Motlana (**CEO**)

E150399


*Label to be used on the following products only:*

- *citizen band radio equipment*
- *cellular equipment*
- *trunk radio equipment*
- *spread spectrum devices*
- *leased channel radio equipment*
- *cordless telephone*
- *wireless security devices*
- *wireless microphone*
- *radio-control equipment*
- *medical & biology telemetry equipment*

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yoshima-Kogyodanchi Iwaki-City Fukushima 970-1192 Japan.
Phone: (+81) 246-36-4111 Fax: (+81) 246-36-8259

## DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **Alpine Electronics, Inc.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Product | : | **Bluetooth Module** |
| Model/ Type Number | : | **IAM 2.1 BT PWB EU** |
| Directive and Standards used | : | **Radio: EN 300 328 V1.7.1: 2006-10** |
| | | **EMC: EN 301 489-17 V1.3.2: 2008-04** |
| | | **EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04** |
| | | **ISO7637-2: 2004** |
| | | **Safety: IEC 60065 Ed.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2005** |
| | | **EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006** |
| Year of affixing CE marking | : | **2009** |
| Signature | : | |
| Name | : | Shinichi Asuke |
| Date | : | November 12, 2009 |

CE

REPÚBLICA FEDERATIVA DO BRASIL
AGÊNCIA NACIONAL DE TELECOMUNICAÇÕES

ANATEL

## Certificado de Homologação

(Intransferível)

Nº **0818-10-6003**

Validade: **Indeterminada**

Emissão: **19/05/2010**

Solicitante:
**LEAR DO BRASIL IND COM INTERIORES AUTOMOTIVOS LTDA**
**AV. ADHEMAR PINTO SIQUEIRA S/N BAIRRO DO GRAMA**
**12280-000 - CACAPAVA - SP**

Fabricante:
**LEAR AUTOMOTIVE ELECTRONICS AND ELECTRICAL PRODUCT**
**RENQING ROAD NO. 509 5 BUILDING PU DONG NEW DISTRICT**
**SHANGHAI - CHINA**

Este documento homologa, nos termos do Regulamento para Certificação e Homologação de Produtos para Telecomunicações, aprovado pela Resolução Anatel nº 242, de 30 de novembro de 2000, o Certificado de Conformidade nº 04108/10 , emitido pelo **OCD - IBRACE - Instituto Brasileiro de Certificação**. Esta homologação é expedida em nome do solicitante aqui identificado e é válida somente para o produto a seguir discriminado, cuja utilização deve observar as condições estabelecidas na regulamentação do serviço ou aplicação a que se destina.

Tipo:
**Dispositivo de Operação Periódica** - Categoria **II**

Modelo(s):
**KOBJTF10A**

Serviço/Aplicação:
**Radiocomunicação de Radiação Restrita**

Características técnicas básicas:

| Freqüência Fundamental (MHz) | Intensidade de Campo (µV/m) | Distância da Medida (m) |
|---|---|---|
| 314.95 | 5714.79 | 3.0 |

Modulação: ASK + FSK; Designação de Emissão: 274KWD; Limitação de Operação: 0,86 s.

Ensaio de SAR: não aplicável, pois o produto opera com potência média inferior a 20 mW.

Observações:

**Na instalação do produto devem ser observadas as condições de uso conforme estabelecido no Regulamento sobre Equipamentos de Radiocomunicação de Radiação Restrita.**

Constitui obrigação do fornecedor do produto no Brasil providenciar a identificação do produto homologado, nos termos do art. 39 do Regulamento anexo à Resolução Anatel nº 242, em todas as unidades comercializadas, antes de sua efetiva distribuição ao mercado, assim como observar e manter as características técnicas que fundamentaram a certificação original.

**As informações constantes deste certificado de homologação podem ser confirmadas no SGCH - Sistema de Gestão de Certificação e Homologação, disponível no portal da Anatel. (www.anatel.gov.br).**

Maximiliano Salvadori Martinhão
Gerente Geral de Certificação e
Engenharia do Espectro



REPÚBLICA FEDERATIVA DO BRASIL
AGÊNCIA NACIONAL DE TELECOMUNICAÇÕES

ANATEL

## Certificado de Homologação

(Intransferível)

Nº **0385-10-4767**

Validade: **Indeterminada**

Emissão: **25/03/2010**

Solicitante:
**LEAR DO BRASIL IND COM INTERIORES AUTOMOTIVOS LTDA**
**AV. ADHEMAR PINTO SIQUEIRA S/N BAIRRO DO GRAMA**
**12280-000 - CACAPAVA - SP**

Fabricante:
**LEAR CORPORATION HOLDING SPAIN S.L.U. - ELECTRICAL**
**EUROPEAN TECHNOLOGICAL CENTRE (LABORATORY), FUSTER 54-56 POLIGON INDUSTRIAL**
**VALLS TARRAGONA - ESPANHA**

Este documento homologa, nos termos do Regulamento para Certificação e Homologação de Produtos para Telecomunicações, aprovado pela Resolução Anatel nº 242, de 30 de novembro de 2000, o Certificado de Conformidade nº 03931/10 , emitido pelo **OCD - IBRACE - Instituto Brasileiro de Certificação**. Esta homologação é expedida em nome do solicitante aqui identificado e é válida somente para o produto a seguir discriminado, cuja utilização deve observar as condições estabelecidas na regulamentação do serviço ou aplicação a que se destina.

Tipo:
**Sistemas de Identificação por Radiofrequências** - Categoria **II**

Modelo(s):
**KOBJBG10A**

Serviço/Aplicação:
**Radiocomunicação de Radiação Restrita**

Características técnicas básica:

| Frequência de Operação (MHz) | Intensidade de Campo (µV/m) | Distância da Medida (m) | Tipo de Modulação |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.1252 | 2124.01 | 3.0 | ASK |

Observações:

**Na instalação do produto devem ser observadas as condições de uso conforme estabelecido no Regulamento sobre Equipamentos de Radiocomunicação de Radiação Restrita.**

Constitui obrigação do fornecedor do produto no Brasil providenciar a identificação do produto homologado, nos termos do art. 39 do Regulamento anexo à Resolução Anatel nº 242, em todas as unidades comercializadas, antes de sua efetiva distribuição ao mercado, assim como observar e manter as características técnicas que fundamentaram a certificação original.

**As informações constantes deste certificado de homologação podem ser confirmadas no SGCH - Sistema de Gestão de Certificação e Homologação, disponível no portal da Anatel. (www.anatel.gov.br).**

Maximiliano Salvadori Martinhão
Gerente Geral de Certificação e
Engenharia do Espectro

# A

## B



## C

# D

# E

# F

## G



## H

## I



## J



## K



## L

# M

## N



## O



## P

# Q



# R

## S

# T

## U



## V

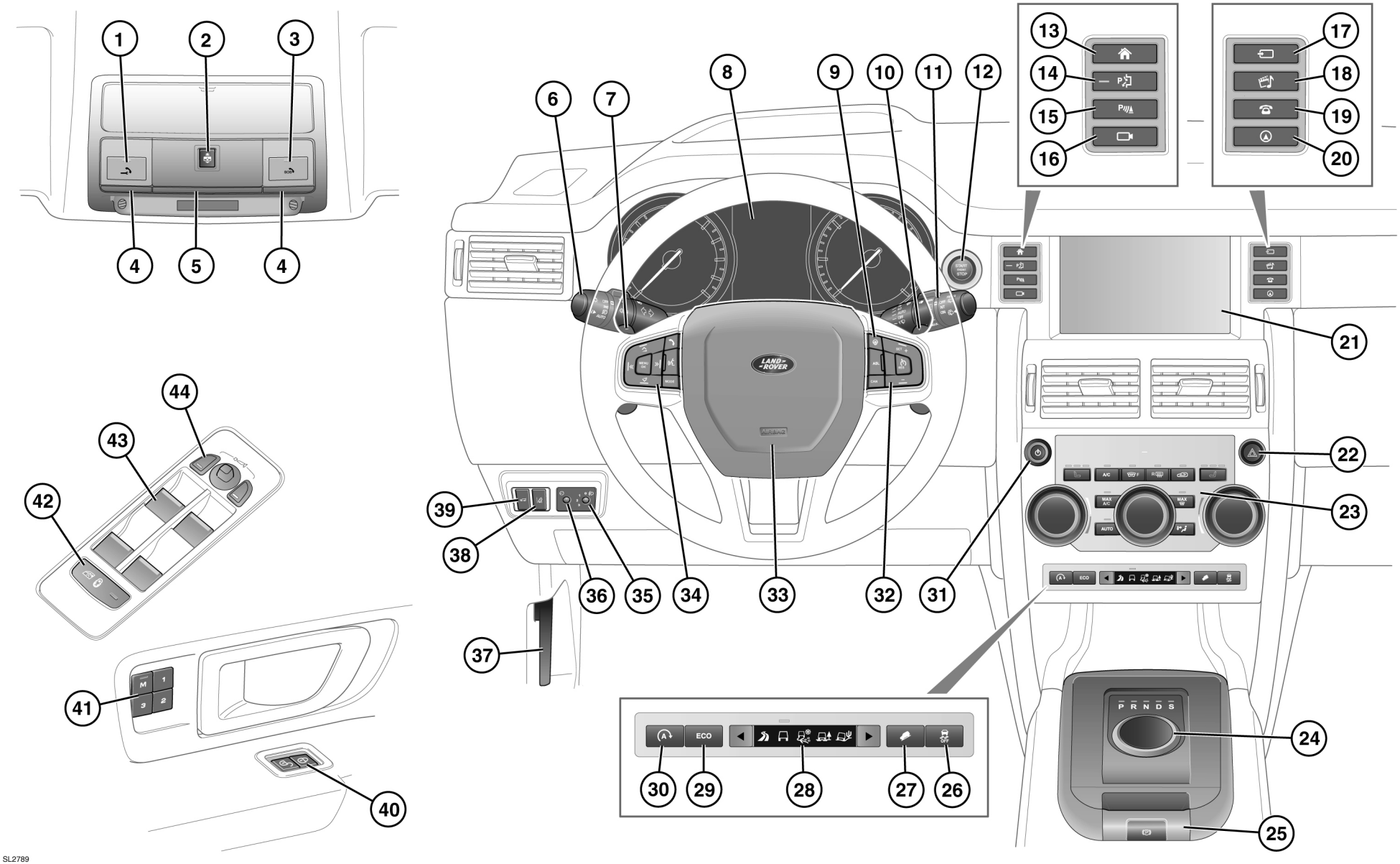
# W

# X

## DRIVER CONTROLS

For further information on the numbered item, refer to the page number.

1. InControl remote - Breakdown call (**165**).
2. Roof blind (**77**).
3. InControl remote - SOS emergency call (**165**)
4. Front map reading lamps (**62**).
5. Front interior lamp (**62**).
6. Exterior lamps and Trip computer (**58**/**50**).
7. Downshift gear paddle. (**112**).
8. Instrument panel and Message centre (**48**).
9. Heated steering wheel (**31**).
10. Upshift gear paddle (**112**).
11. Wiper/washers controls (**64**).
12. Engine START/STOP (**108**).
13. Touch screen home menu (**79**).
14. Touch screen General settings or Park assist (**80**/**126**).
15. Mute or Parking aids off (**122**).
16. Touch screen on/off or Surround cameras (**130**).
17. Media source (**150**).
18. Media system (**150**).
19. Telephone (**163**).
20. Navigation (**169**).
21. Touch screen (**79**).
22. Hazard warning lamps.
23. Heating, ventilation and air conditioning controls (**82**/**83**).
24. Rotary gear selector (**112**), for Manual transmission (**114**).
25. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (**120**).
26. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) (**115**).
27. Hill Descent Control (HDC) (**144**).
28. Terrain Response (**141**).
29. ECO Program (**141**).
30. Intelligent stop/start (**110**).
31. Media on/off and volume (**150**).
32. Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (**133**/**134**).
33. Horn.
34. Audio controls, Voice control, and Telephone (**151**/**160**/**164**).
35. Headlamp levelling (**60**).
36. Interior illumination control (**63**).
37. Bonnet release (**188**).
38. Lane departure warning (**148**).
39. Tailgate release/open (**10**).
40. Central locking/unlocking (**16**).
41. Driving position memory (**21**).
42. Rear window isolation and child door locks (**77**).
43. Window controls (**77**).
44. Mirror adjustment/power-folding mirrors (**68**).


1
2
3
4
5
4
44
43
42
41
40
39
38
36
35
34
33
32
31
37
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
30
29
28
27
26
ECO
P R N D S
SL2789